ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN):

Vehicle handover date:

Škoda partner:

_____
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.

_____
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty? ☐ **YES /** ☐ **NO**

Limitation of Škoda extended warranty

Whichever comes first.

Years: or **km:** or **miles:**

Prepaid service option

Applies to the Czech Republic

☐ Standard
☐ Plus

☐ 5 years, 60,000 km maximum
☐ 5 years, 100,000 km maximum
☐ 5 years, 150,000 km maximum

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

3FA012720AA

Printing, reproduction, translation, or other use of this work or any part hereof shall not be permitted without the written consent of Škoda Auto a.s..

Any and all proprietary rights to this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by Škoda Auto a.s.

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: Škoda Auto a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© Škoda Auto a.s. 2026

Vehicle owners

1. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

Owner (title, name / company):

Address:

Telephone:

Škoda partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

Owner (title, name / company):

Address:

Telephone:

Škoda partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

3FA012720AA

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owners

6 Explanations

7 About the Owner's Manual

8 About this document

9 Tutorial videos

10 Tutorial videos

11 Simply Clever overview

12 Quick links

13 Instructions in the Infotainment system
13 Functionality

15 Vehicle overviews
15 Front and side vehicle area
16 Rear vehicle area
17 Driver's seat
18 Centre console and passenger seat
18 Space under the bonnet

19 Indicator lights
19 Functionality
19 Overview
25 Overview

31 Correct and safe use
31 Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle
31 New vehicle or new parts
31 Regular checks
31 Incorrect vehicle adjustments
32 Sensor and camera maintenance
32 Passing of radio waves through the windshield
32 Space under the bonnet
33 Handling fluids
33 12V vehicle battery
33 Using vehicle electrical sockets
33 Before your journey
34 Sitting safely
34 Correct belt webbing arrangement
34 Correct steering wheel position
35 Securing children properly
35 Transporting objects safely
36 Safe driving
37 Stop the vehicle safely
37 Exiting the vehicle
37 Different climatic conditions
38 Emergency call
40 After an accident

41 Key, locks and alarm
41 Key
42 Digital key
46 Central locking
47 Keyless locking
49 Alarm

51 Doors, windows and the boot lid
51 Doors
51 Child safety lock on the rear doors
51 Windows – with electrical operation
53 Sunroof sunshade
53 Sun visors
53 Boot lid – with manual operation
54 Releasing the boot lid

55 Seats, steering wheel and mirrors
55 Front seat – with manual operation
55 Front seats – with electrical operation
55 Seat memory
56 Rear seats
57 Headrests
57 Rear armrest
58 Steering wheel
58 Interior mirror
59 Exterior mirrors

61 Restraint systems and airbags
61 Seat belts
62 Child seat
64 Fasteners for child seats
67 Airbags
68 Passenger front airbag switch

70 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
70 Exterior lighting
71 Daytime running lights
71 Automatic activation of lights
72 High beam and headlight flasher
72 Turn signal
73 All weather lights

73 Rear fog light
73 Hazard warning lights function
73 Parking lights function
74 Headlights adaptive function
74 Coming Home, Leaving Home functions
74 Light Assist high beam assistant
75 Dynamic Light Assist headlight assistant
76 Interior lighting
76 Interior background lighting
77 Wipers and washers

80 Heating and air conditioning
80 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
83 Independent air conditioning
84 Windows heating
84 Seat heating
85 Steering wheel heating

86 Driver information system
86 Digital cockpit
86 Driving data
87 Vehicle status

88 Getting to know the Infotainment system
88 The Infotainment system overview
88 HOME menu
89 Favourite applications
89 Applications menu
89 Logout screen
89 Configuration assistant
89 System
90 Sound

91 The Infotainment system controls
91 Screen controls
91 Keypad
92 Control centre
92 Notification centre
92 Voice control

95 Radio
95 Radio

98 Media
98 Audio player
99 File management

101 Mobile devices management
101 Using mobile devices

103 Phone
103 Using the phone
104 Contacts
104 Phone conversation
104 Conference call
105 SMS
106 Voicemail

107 Wi-Fi
107 Wi-Fi use

109 SmartLink
109 Using the SmartLink function
109 Android Auto
111 Apple CarPlay

113 Navigation
113 Map
115 Finding a destination
116 Predictive destinations
116 Last destinations
117 Favourite destinations
117 Route guidance

119 Online services
119 Škoda Connect
120 MyŠkoda application
120 Data connection
121 Škoda Connect services user registration and activation
121 Setting personal data protection
122 User management
124 Personalisation
124 System update
125 Connect Store
126 Information calls
126 Breakdown call
127 Škoda Connect services

128 Starting and driving
128 Switching the ignition on/off
129 Automatic gearbox
129 Driving modes
130 Regenerative braking
131 One Pedal Driving
132 Economical driving style
132 Towing
134 Brakes
135 Electrical parking brake
137 Auto Hold automatic securing of the car
137 Electronic engine sound (e-Sound)

138 Driver assist systems
138 Braking and stabilising systems
139 Front Assist
140 Pedestrian and cyclist detection
141 Speed limiter
142 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
146 Lane Assist lane keeping assistant
148 Travel Assist
150 Side Assist lane change assistant
151 Traffic sign recognition

152 Proactive passenger protection Crew Protect Assist
153 Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
154 Inattention detection
154 Emergency Assist assistant for emergency situations
155 Automatic recuperation assist Eco Assist

157 Parking assist systems
157 Park Pilot parking aid
158 Rear view camera
159 Monitoring the surroundings Top View
160 Rear Traffic Alert
161 Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle
162 Smart parking assistant
164 Park assistant with memory function
165 Remotely controlled parking

168 High-voltage system
168 High-voltage system and battery
170 High-voltage battery state of health
170 High-voltage battery calibration
171 Range
172 Driving performance availability

174 Charging
174 General information on charging
177 Charging with alternating current(AC)
178 Charging with direct current (DC)
179 Charging set-up
181 Bidirectional charging

183 Charging cables
183 General information on charging cables
184 Charging cable Mode 2
185 Charging cable Mode 3
185 Universal charging cable Mode 2

189 Space under the bonnet
189 The bonnet
189 Coolant

191 12V vehicle battery and fuses
191 12V vehicle battery
192 Using jump start cables
193 Fuses
194 Fuses in the dash panel
195 Fuses in the space under the bonnet

197 Wheels
197 Tyres and rims
198 All-season or winter tyres
198 Snow chains
199 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
200 Tyre repair kit
203 Tyre pressure
204 Tyre pressure monitor
204 Wheel bolt cover caps
204 Full-width wheel cover

206 Storage space and interior equipment
206 Luggage compartment equipment
206 Emergency equipment
207 Tool kit
207 Fasteners in the boot
208 Rigid boot lid
208 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
209 Interior equipment front
210 Interior equipment rear
210 Storage compartment for umbrella
210 Phone box
211 Cup holder
211 Waste container
211 12V socket
212 V2L adapter
214 Bag for stowing charging cables
214 USB inputs

215 Roof rack and the towing bracket
215 Roof rack
215 Removable towing bracket

219 Maintenance and cleaning
219 Service events
219 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
220 Škoda prepaid service
220 Interior
221 Exterior

225 Technical data and specifications
225 Technical data regulations
225 Vehicle identification data
225 Axle weights and loads
226 Operating weight
226 Vehicle dimensions
226 Towing bracket

229 Customer information
229 Stickers and labels
229 Declaration of Conformity
229 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
232 Event data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
232 Personal data
232 Collection and processing of scrap cars
233 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
233 Product recycling
234 Trademarks Information
234 Preparation for breathalyser

234 Warranty

238 Specifications of electric motors and high-voltage accumulators
238 Technical data and specifications
238 85 kW electric motor
238 99 kW electric motor
238 155 kW electric motor

239 Simply Clever
239 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
239 Cup holder with the Easy Open function
239 Adjustable divider in cup holder
239 The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment
240 The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment
240 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
240 Hook on the lashing eye of the TOP TETHER system
240 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
240 Boot lid handle
241 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
241 Phone pocket
241 Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats
241 Glasses holder
241 Storage compartment for umbrella
241 Bag for stowing charging cables
242 Washer fluid filler cap
242 Ice scraper in the boot lid
242 Rear reading lamps

243 Index

Explanations

Specialist garage
"Specialist garage" is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for Škoda vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a Škoda Authorised workshop or Škoda Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Škoda Service Partner
"Škoda Service Partner" is a garage that is contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to service Škoda vehicles and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Škoda Partner
"A Partner of Škoda" is a company that has been contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to sell new Škoda vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using Škoda Genuine Parts and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Text notes
"**Pressing**" – short press (e.g. of a button) for less than 1 second

"**Holding**" – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units
Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

Symbols

⚠ DANGER
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE
Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » *page 63*.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » *page 13*
- On the Škoda website
- In MyŠkoda mobile application

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

You can order the printed Owner's Manual supplied with your new vehicle from any Škoda Partner.

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq

About this document

The essentials in a nutshell

With the environment in mind, this printed document contains only basic information about the safety, operation and functions of the vehicle or emergency procedures.

The contents of this document were the subject of a revision at the time your car was manufactured. As a result, some information contained here may not be identical to the digital version of the Owner's Manual, which can be modified and further updated by Škoda Auto if necessary, thanks to the remote update function. Therefore, in the event of a conflict, the information in the digital version of the Owner's Manual will take precedence over the information in this printed document.

This document does not replace the complete Owner's Manual. Therefore, read the complete Owner's Manual before using the vehicle and follow the complete Owner's Manual in the first instance.

The complete Owner's Manual can be found in digital form at the following locations:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle *» page 13*
- In MyŠkoda mobile application
- On the Škoda website

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

In case of unavailability of the complete Owner's Manual, use the information or assistance call or seek help from a specialized garage.

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq

Tutorial videos

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

» *page 140*

Tutorial videos

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

	Front Assist – Intersection Assist » *page 140*
	Assisted lane change – how it works » *page 150*

Simply Clever overview

	» page 239
	» page 239
	» page 240
	» page 240
	» page 240
	» page 240
	» page 241
	» page 241
	» page 239
	» page 239
	» page 240
	» page 241
	» page 241
	» page 241
	» page 242
	» page 241
	» page 242
	» page 242

Quick links

» page 7
» page 51
» page 64
» page 69
» page 103
» page 113
» page 130
» page 130
» page 132
» page 132
» page 193
» page 215
» page 203
» page 225

Charging:

- » page 169
- » page 171
- » page 174
- » page 177
- » page 178
- » page 179
- » page 183

Driver assist systems:

- » page 138
- » page 139
- » page 140
- » page 141
- » page 142
- » page 146
- » page 148
- » page 146
- » page 151
- » page 152
- » page 153
- » page 154
- » page 154
- » page 155

Parking assist systems:

- » page 157
- » page 158
- » page 159
- » page 160
- » page 161
- » page 162
- » page 164
- » page 165

Instructions in the Infotainment system

Functionality

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🕮 on the Infotainment system screen.

🛈 If 🕮 is not displayed, check for available system updates » page 90.

The start menu opens on the item containing the interactive images.

Home menu items:

- 🔍 Search
- Interactive images
- Chapters of the manual
- Symbols
- Quick access to other items
- ⚙ Settings

🔍 Search

1. Tap 🔍.
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

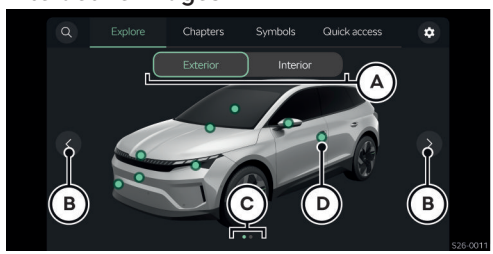
Or:

1. Tap 🔍.
2. Press 🎤 in the search bar.
3. State the desired voice command and confirm it.

🛈

- When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
- If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



Ⓐ Switching between the interior and exterior of the vehicle

Ⓑ Switching between images

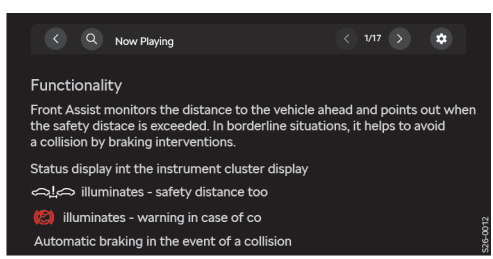
Ⓒ Number of images and position of the displayed image

Ⓓ Displaying information or a detailed image

Chapters

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several subchapters or topics.

After selecting a chapter or subchapter, an overview of the topics is displayed.



1. To display more information, press > or <.

   The number of topics and the position of the displayed topic in the chapter is displayed between < and > symbols.

Symbols

The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lights are sorted by color.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Quick access to other items

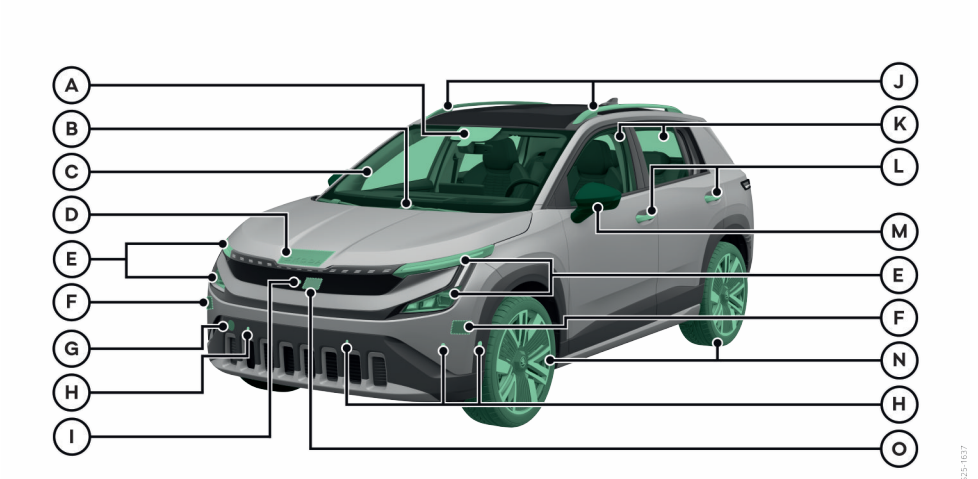
The menu may contain, for example, the following information on how to use the infotainment manual, an overview of the individual vehicle equipment Simply Clever, an overview of video tutorials with QR-codes to a website with the corresponding video tutorial, if available.

⚙ Settings

The item contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and side vehicle area



Ⓐ Under the windscreen:
- Assist systems camera
- Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 71
- Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 77
- Humidity and solar intensity sensors
- Radio wave passage area » page 32

Ⓑ Wipers – operation » page 77

Ⓒ Windscreen – defrosting/demisting » page 84

Ⓓ Bonnet lock (under the bonnet) » page 189

Ⓔ Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation » page 70
- Light Assist high beam assistant » page 74
- Dynamic Light Assist headlight assistant » page 75
- All weather lights » page 73

Ⓕ Radar sensor for assist systems (inside bumper)

Ⓖ Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 133

Ⓗ Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

Ⓘ Assist systems camera

Ⓙ Roof rack *» page 215*
Ⓚ Side door windows – control *» page 52*
Ⓛ Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Opening the door *» page 51*
- Keyless locking (KESSY) *» page 47*
- Digital key *» page 43*

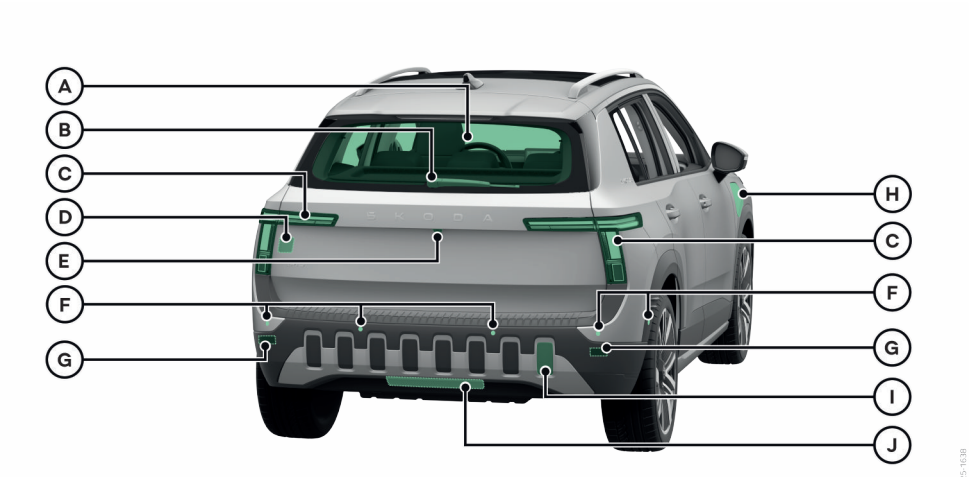
Ⓜ Wing mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation *» page 59*
- Assist systems camera

Ⓝ Wheels:
- Tyres and rims *» page 197*
- Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle *» page 199*
- Tyre repair kit *» page 200*
- Tyre pressure *» page 203*
- Tyre pressure monitor *» page 204*

Ⓞ Front radar sensor for assistance systems (under the cover)

Functionality of the sensors and cameras
- Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean *» page 32*.

Rear vehicle area



Ⓐ Rear window – heating *» page 84*
Ⓑ Rear window wiper and washer – operation *» page 77*
Ⓒ Tail light:
- Operation *» page 70*

- Rear fog light – operation » page 73

  Rear fog light is only on the driver's side

Ⓓ The ice scraper (on the inside of the boot lid)

Ⓔ Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Boot lid with manual operation » page 54
- Assist systems camera » page 158

Ⓕ Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

Ⓖ Radar sensor for assist systems (inside bumper)

Ⓗ High-voltage battery charging socket cover » page 175

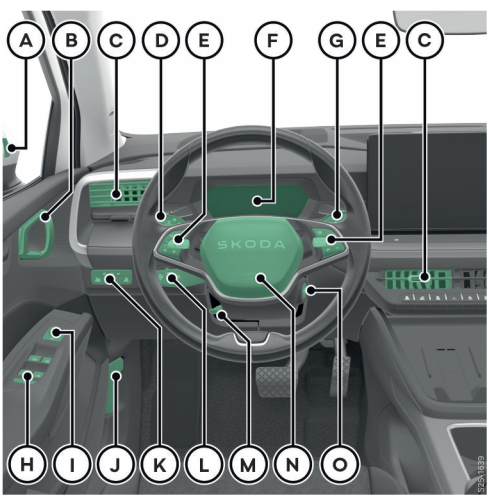
Ⓘ Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 133

Ⓙ Depending on vehicle equipment:
- Towing bracket » page 215

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

- Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 32.

Driver's seat



Ⓐ Side Assist » page 150 lane change assistant and vehicle exit warning assistant indicator light » page 161

Ⓑ Door handle » page 51

Ⓒ Air outlet nozzle

Ⓓ Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Turn signal » page 72
- High beam and headlight flasher » page 72
- High beam assistant » page 75
- Headlight Assistant » page 75
- Wipers and washers » page 77

Ⓔ Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 58

Ⓕ Digital cockpit » page 86

Ⓖ Automatic gearbox selector lever » page 129

The Ⓟ button – parking brake » page 135

Ⓗ Window operation » page 52

Ⓘ Wing mirror operation » page 59

Ⓙ Unlocking the bonnet » page 189

Ⓚ Light switches:
- Exterior lighting » page 70
- All weather lights » page 73
- Rear fog light » page 73

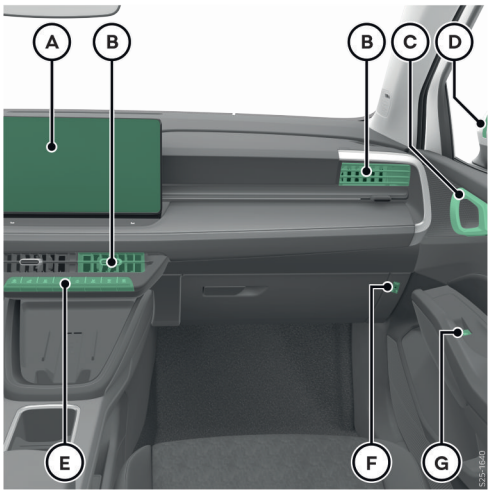
Ⓛ Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Speed limiter » page 141
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) » page 144
- Travel Assist » page 148

Ⓜ Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 58

Ⓝ Steering wheel with horn / driver's front airbag » page 67

Ⓞ Starter button » page 128

Centre console and passenger seat



Ⓐ The Infotainment system » page 88

Ⓑ Air outlet nozzle

Ⓒ Door handle » page 51

Ⓓ Side Assist » page 150 lane change assistant and vehicle exit warning assistant indicator light » page 161

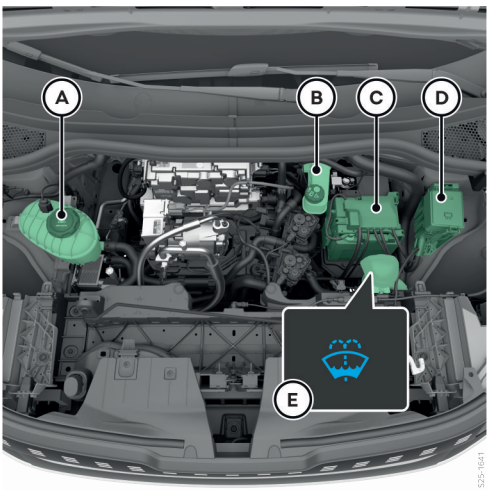
Ⓔ Buttons (depending on vehicle equipment):

- ASSIST Access to selection and settings of driving assistance systems
- MODE Selecting driving mode » page 130
- PARK Parking assistance systems menu » page 157
- Hazard warning lights function » page 73
- Central locking » page 46
- CLIMA Displaying the air conditioning control screen on the Infotainment system screen » page 81
- MAX Quick windscreen defogging/defrosting » page 84
- REAR Rear window heating » page 84

Ⓕ Passenger front airbag switch (on the side of the dashboard) » page 69

Ⓖ Passenger window operation » page 52

Space under the bonnet



The image is for illustration purposes only – the location and the appearance of individual components may differ.

Ⓐ Coolant expansion reservoir » page 189

Ⓑ Brake fluid reservoir » page 134

Ⓒ 12V vehicle battery » page 191

Ⓓ Fuse box » page 195

Ⓔ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 78

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding indicator lights and the respective messages on instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system can lead to accidents, serious injuries, damage to the vehicle or a loss of warranty.

Indicator lights indicate the current status of the respective functions or faults.

Illumination of some warning lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages on the instrument cluster screen or in the Infotainment system.

Warning lights

In addition, a warning lamp may illuminate on the display, either alone or together with another warning lamp:

⚠ – serious hazard

⚠ – warning

– restriction of the driver assist systems

Overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are functioning correctly, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on.

For further details, see » *page 19, Functionality*.

Link to the digital Owner's Manual:
https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Symbol	Meaning
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a serious hazard » *page 19*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Take over steering immediately » *page 148*.
	Unfastened front and rear seat belt » *page 61*.
	Proactive passenger protection intervenes » *page 152*.
	Do not continue driving. 12V vehicle battery is not charging » *page 192*.
	Do not continue driving or immediately connect the vehicle to the charging station. The vehicle drives at a maximum speed of 7 km/h. Insufficient driving performance » *page 172*.
	Do not continue driving. Coolant level too low » *page 190*.
	Do not continue driving. Brake fluid level too low » *page 135*.
	Do not continue driving. Parking brake fault » *page 136*.
	Do not continue driving. Electromechanical brake booster fault » *page 139*.
	Do not continue driving. Together with (ABS) – fault in brake system and ABS » *page 135*, » *page 139*.
	Illuminated – parking brake engaged » *page 135*.
	Move to a parking space with less slope. Flashing – parking on a slope with a very high gradient » *page 136*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop the vehicle and follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 58.
	Do not continue driving. Flashes – steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 58.
	Emergency Assist intervenes » page 155.
	Do not continue driving. High-voltage battery -– fire hazard » page 169.
	Do not continue driving. Overheated electrical system » page 169.
	Do not continue driving. Electric drive system fault » page 133, » page 169.
	Depress the brake pedal. Warning if there is a risk of collision » page 139, » page 140.
	Depress the brake pedal. The system is not braking sufficiently » page 132, » page 144, » page 156.
	Open all windows immediately. High concentration of CO2 » page 82.
	Take a break while driving. Critical driver condition detected » page 153.
	Take a break while driving. Driver alert system warning » page 153.
	Pay attention when you are driving. Attention alert warning » page 154.
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a warning – warning » page 19.

Symbol	Meaning
	Together with other indicator lights it signals the restriction of the driver assist systems. Follow the instructions indicated by the assist system indicator lights. » page 19.
	You can continue your journey by charging the high-voltage battery as soon as possible. Discharged high-voltage battery » page 169.
	You can continue your journey by charging the high-voltage battery as soon as possible. Low charge level of the high-voltage battery » page 169.
	Continue driving to warm up the high-voltage battery or connect the vehicle to a charging station. Limited driving performance » page 172.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Range cannot be calculated » page 169.
	The 12V battery needs to be charged, please follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. Low charge of the 12V vehicle battery » page 192.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. 12V vehicle battery is not charging » page 192.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. 12V vehicle battery fault » page 192.
	You can continue your journey by adding washer fluid. Washer fluid too low » page 78.

Symbol	Meaning
	You can continue driving, the lights and wipers must be operated manually. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Light sensor and rain sensor fault » page 72, » page 78.
	You can continue your journey if the vehicle's view is clear. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Wipers fault » page 78.
	You can continue driving if the malfunction does not endanger road safety. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Defective LED light source » page 71.
	Turn on the hazard warning lights. The lights are not switched on » page 70.
	Rear fog light illuminated » page 73.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Increased brake temperature » page 135.
	Do not continue driving. Together with ⚠ – high brake temperature » page 135.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Together with (ABS) – regenerative braking fault » page 131.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Electric drive system fault » page 169.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Electronic engine sound fault » page 137.

Symbol	Meaning
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. ABS malfunction » page 139.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Parking brake fault » page 136.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Immediately seek assistance from a specialist service. Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 139.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Worn brake pads » page 135.
	Stop the vehicle, follow the instructions in the operator's manual. Tyre pressure change » page 198, » page 204, » page 204.
	Stop the vehicle, follow the instructions in the operator's manual. illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 58.
	Unlock the steering lock or consult a qualified specialist workshop. flashes – steering column lock not active » page 58.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 58.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. KESSY – key not found » page 45, » page 49.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. KESSY – problem with switching on the ignition » page 128.

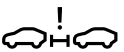
Symbol	Meaning
ON	Passenger front airbag switched on » page 69.
OFF	Passenger front airbag switched off » page 69.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service immediately. Illuminated together with OFF – airbag switch fault » page 69.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Airbag system fault » page 68.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Proactive passenger protection fault » page 153.
	Illuminates for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device » page 68.
	Do not continue driving, follow the instructions in the Operator's Manual. Driver's seat belt not routed correctly » page 61.
OFF	The ESC Sport is activated. » page 138, » page 139, » page 139.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Illuminates – ESC or ASR malfunction » page 139.
	Flashes –ESC or ASR is engaged » page 138, » page 138.
OFF	Deactivated Front Assist » page 140.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Front Assist inaccessible » page 140.

Symbol	Meaning
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Unavailable ACC » page 146.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Side Assist system malfunction » page 151.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 161.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant » page 162.
SOS	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Emergency Assist malfunction » page 155.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of fatigue detection » page 153.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Fault or unavailability of the camera in the rear view mirror » page 154, » page 154.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of driver inattention assistant » page 154.
P	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Park Pilot malfunction » page 158.

Symbol	Meaning
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Travel Assist malfunction » page 150.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 146.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. System Lane Assist unavailable Lane Assist unavailable » page 147.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display » page 152.
	Open all windows. You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Increased concentration of CO2 » page 82.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Fault in the CO2 concentration sensor. » page 82.
	Emergency call system malfunction » page 38.
	Flashing – the left turn signal » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the turn signals. Flashes faster – right turn signal defective » page 72.
	Flashing – the right turn signal » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the turn signals. Flashes faster – right turn signal defective » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the trailer turn signals. Trailer turn signal light fault » page 73.

Symbol	Meaning
HOLD	On – Auto Hold secures the car » page 137.
	Flashing – stopping on a slope with a very high gradient Move to a parking space with less slope. » page 137.
	High-voltage battery is being charged » page 178, » page 179.
	Lane Assist is activated and prepared to intervene » page 146.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the permissible speed » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching roundabout » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching intersection » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching left turn » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching right turn » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the left » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the right » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the cancelled speed limit » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching priority in the journey » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching traffic light » page 144.

Symbol	Meaning
	Illuminated – the speed limiter regulates the speed of the vehicle » page 141.
	Eco Assist regulates » page 156.
	The Travel Assist is activated. » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated – cruise control is regulating the speed » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated, lane change in progress » page 149.
	Low outside temperature » page 86.
	High beam or headlight flasher on » page 72.
	High beam assist activated – high beams on » page 75.
	Headlight assist activated – high beams on » page 75.
	Lane Assist is activated but not ready to intervene » page 146.
	Automatic gearbox locked » page 129.
	Take over driving » page 148.
	High beam assist activated » page 75.
	Headlight assist activated » page 75.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Speed limiter fault » page 142.
	Illuminated – speed limiter activated » page 141.
	The ACC is activated. » page 144.
	Travel Assist activated, lane change not possible » page 149.

Symbol	Meaning
	Travel Assist activated, lane change possible » page 149.
	Lane Assist is deactivated » page 146.
	Front Assist start-up in progress » page 140.
	Failure to keep a safe distance » page 139.
	Vehicle in front of you » page 156.
	Speed limit ahead » page 156.
	Roundabout ahead » page 156.
	Intersection ahead » page 156.
	Left-hand turn ahead » page 156.
	Recommendation to release the accelerator pedal » page 156.
	Right-hand turn ahead » page 156.
	Right-hand exit ahead » page 156.
	Take a break while driving. Driver alert system warning » page 153.
	Pay attention when you are driving. Attention alert warning » page 154.
	Normal driving mode » page 130.
	Eco driving mode » page 130.
	Individual driving mode » page 130.
	Sport driving mode » page 130.
	Unavailable map data for Dynamic road sign display » page 151.
	Incorrect warning settings for Dynamic road sign display » page 151.

Symbol	Meaning
	Bad weather lights on » page 73.
	The connected external device draws current from the high-voltage battery » page 213.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. Emergency charging » page 176.

Overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are functioning correctly, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on.

For further details, see » page 19, Functionality.

Symbol	Meaning
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a serious hazard » page 19.
	Take over steering immediately » page 148.
	Unfastened front and rear seat belt » page 61.
	Proactive passenger protection intervenes » page 152.
	Do not continue driving. 12V vehicle battery is not charging » page 192.
	Do not continue driving or immediately connect the vehicle to the charging station. The vehicle drives at a maximum speed of 7 km/h. Insufficient driving performance » page 172.
	Do not continue driving. Coolant level too low » page 190.

Symbol	Meaning
	Do not continue driving. Brake fluid level too low » page 135.
	Do not continue driving. Parking brake fault » page 136.
	Do not continue driving. Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 139.
	Do not continue driving. Together with (ABS) – fault in brake system and ABS » page 135, » page 139.
	Illuminated – parking brake engaged » page 135.
	Move to a parking space with less slope. Flashing – parking on a slope with a very high gradient » page 136.
	Stop the vehicle and follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 58.
	Do not continue driving. Flashes – steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 58.
	Emergency Assist intervenes » page 155.
	Do not continue driving. High-voltage battery -– fire hazard » page 169.
	Do not continue driving. Overheated electrical system » page 169.
	Do not continue driving. Electric drive system fault » page 133, » page 169.
	Depress the brake pedal. Warning if there is a risk of collision » page 139, » page 140.
	Depress the brake pedal. The system is not braking sufficiently » page 132, » page 144, » page 156.

Symbol	Meaning
	Open all windows immediately. High concentration of CO2 » page 82.
	Take a break while driving. Critical driver condition detected » page 153.
	Take a break while driving. Driver alert system warning » page 153.
	Pay attention when you are driving. Attention alert warning » page 154.
	Individually or together with another indicator light it indicates a warning – warning » page 19.
	Together with other indicator lights it signals the restriction of the driver assist systems. Follow the instructions indicated by the assist system indicator lights. » page 19.
	You can continue your journey by charging the high-voltage battery as soon as possible. Discharged high-voltage battery » page 169.
	You can continue your journey by charging the high-voltage battery as soon as possible. Low charge level of the high-voltage battery » page 169.
	Continue driving to warm up the high-voltage battery or connect the vehicle to a charging station. Limited driving performance » page 172.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Range cannot be calculated » page 169.

Symbol	Meaning
	The 12V battery needs to be charged, please follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual. Low charge of the 12V vehicle battery » page 192.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. 12V vehicle battery is not charging » page 192.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. 12V vehicle battery fault » page 192.
	You can continue your journey by adding washer fluid. Washer fluid too low » page 78.
	You can continue driving, the lights and wipers must be operated manually. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Light sensor and rain sensor fault » page 72, » page 78.
	You can continue your journey if the vehicle's view is clear. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Wipers fault » page 78.
	You can continue driving if the malfunction does not endanger road safety. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Defective LED light source » page 71.
	Turn on the hazard warning lights. The lights are not switched on » page 70.
	Rear fog light illuminated » page 73.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Increased brake temperature » page 135.
	Do not continue driving. Together with ⚠ – high brake temperature » page 135.

Symbol	Meaning
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Together with (ABS) – regenerative braking fault » page 131.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Electric drive system fault » page 169.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Electronic engine sound fault » page 137.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. ABS malfunction » page 139.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Parking brake fault » page 136.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Immediately seek assistance from a specialist service. Electromechanical brake booster fault » page 139.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Worn brake pads » page 135.
	Stop the vehicle, follow the instructions in the operator's manual. Tyre pressure change » page 198, » page 204, » page 204.

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop the vehicle, follow the instructions in the operator's manual. illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 58.
	Unlock the steering lock or consult a qualified specialist workshop. flashes – steering column lock not active » page 58.
	You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage. Steering column lock fault (KESSY system) » page 58.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. KESSY – key not found » page 45, » page 49.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. KESSY – problem with switching on the ignition » page 128.
	Passenger front airbag switched on » page 69.
	Passenger front airbag switched off » page 69.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service immediately. Illuminated together with OFF – airbag switch fault » page 69.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Airbag system fault » page 68.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Proactive passenger protection fault » page 153.
	Illuminates for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device » page 68.

Symbol	Meaning
	Do not continue driving, follow the instructions in the Operator's Manual. Driver's seat belt not routed correctly » page 61.
	The ESC Sport is activated. » page 138, » page 139, » page 139.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Illuminates – ESC or ASR malfunction » page 139.
	Flashes –ESC or ASR is engaged » page 138, » page 138.
	Deactivated Front Assist » page 140.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Front Assist inaccessible » page 140.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Unavailable ACC » page 146.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Side Assist system malfunction » page 151.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 161.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant » page 162.

Symbol	Meaning
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Emergency Assist malfunction » page 155.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of fatigue detection » page 153.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Fault or unavailability of the camera in the rear view mirror » page 154, » page 154.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of driver inattention assistant » page 154.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Park Pilot malfunction » page 158.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Travel Assist malfunction » page 150.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 146.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. System Lane Assist unavailable Lane Assist unavailable » page 147.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display » page 152.

Symbol	Meaning
	Open all windows. You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Increased concentration of CO2 » page 82.
	You can continue driving, seek assistance from a specialist service. Fault in the CO2 concentration sensor. » page 82.
	Emergency call system malfunction » page 38.
	Flashing – the left turn signal » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the turn signals. Flashes faster – right turn signal defective » page 72.
	Flashing – the right turn signal » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the turn signals. Flashes faster – right turn signal defective » page 72.
	Do not continue driving, check the trailer turn signals. Trailer turn signal light fault » page 73.
	On – Auto Hold secures the car » page 137.
	Flashing – stopping on a slope with a very high gradient Move to a parking space with less slope. » page 137.
	High-voltage battery is being charged » page 178, » page 179.
	Lane Assist is activated and prepared to intervene » page 146.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the permissible speed » page 144.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching roundabout » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching intersection » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching left turn » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching right turn » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the left » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the right » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the cancelled speed limit » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching priority in the journey » page 144.
	ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching traffic light » page 144.
	Illuminated – the speed limiter regulates the speed of the vehicle » page 141.
	Eco Assist regulates » page 156.
	The Travel Assist is activated. » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated – cruise control is regulating the speed » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated, lane change in progress » page 149.
	Low outside temperature » page 86.

Symbol	Meaning
	High beam or headlight flasher on » page 72.
	High beam assist activated – high beams on » page 75.
	Headlight assist activated – high beams on » page 75.
	Lane Assist is activated but not ready to intervene » page 146.
	Automatic gearbox locked » page 129.
	Take over driving » page 148.
	High beam assist activated » page 75.
	Headlight assist activated » page 75.
	You can continue driving; follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual at the next convenient opportunity. Speed limiter fault » page 142.
	Illuminated – speed limiter activated » page 141.
	The ACC is activated. » page 144.
	Travel Assist activated, lane change not possible » page 149.
	Travel Assist activated, lane change possible » page 149.
	Lane Assist is deactivated » page 146.
	Front Assist start-up in progress » page 140.
	Failure to keep a safe distance » page 139.
	Vehicle in front of you » page 156.
	Speed limit ahead » page 156.
	Roundabout ahead » page 156.
	Intersection ahead » page 156.

Symbol	Meaning
	Left-hand turn ahead » page 156.
	Recommendation to release the accelerator pedal » page 156.
	Right-hand turn ahead » page 156.
	Right-hand exit ahead » page 156.
	Take a break while driving. Driver alert system warning » page 153.
	Pay attention when you are driving. Attention alert warning » page 154.
	Normal driving mode » page 130.
	Eco driving mode » page 130.
	Individual driving mode » page 130.
	Sport driving mode » page 130.
	Unavailable map data for Dynamic road sign display » page 151.
	Incorrect warning settings for Dynamic road sign display » page 151.
	Bad weather lights on » page 73.
	The connected external device draws current from the high-voltage battery » page 213.
	Follow the instructions in the user manual. Emergency charging » page 176.

Correct and safe use

Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully to ensure that you are using the vehicle correctly.
- When using the vehicle, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the country of use, e.g. those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic, etc.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the vehicle technical parameters. Obstacles that exceed the vehicle's ground clearance » *page 226* can damage the vehicle.
- Take care when carrying out operational, maintenance and self-assistance tasks to avoid damage or injury. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- When pushing the car, be careful not to damage the rear lights, rear spoiler and bodywork.
- Work on the vehicle's safety systems (seat belts and airbag system) may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This could include the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, follow the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's manual. These include car seats, roof racks, compressors, etc.
- Always observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide optimum braking during the first 800 km – they must be worn off first. So drive with extra care.

New tyres

New tyres do not provide optimum grip for the first 500 km. So drive with extra care.

Regular checks

What you should be mindful of before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Repair any defects before driving. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Are the tyres undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread depth sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlights, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen free of damage?
- Are there any fault or other problem indicator lamps on the instrument cluster or infotainment panel?
- Are the air outlet nozzles and air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the washers, wipers and wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades frozen?
- Are all seat belt system components in good working order? Are the seat belts clean and the buckles free from obstruction?
- Are the spoilers undamaged?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there stains of operating fluids under the vehicle?
- Are there any damaged components of the high-voltage system, e.g. orange high-voltage cables?

Incorrect vehicle adjustments

Incorrect changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect the vehicle's safety-relevant and other functions.

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Attach the front registration plate on the designated even surface, preferably without using the registration plate bracket.

  Improper attachment of the registration plate or the registration plate bracket can cause the assist systems to malfunction.

  When installing the registration plate, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the particular country.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

The functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be restricted due to the following reasons:

- Dirt, water, snow and ice on sensors and cameras.
- Foggy windscreen.
- Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
- There is a load secured on the roof rack, e.g. a roof box
- The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.
- The areas of the vehicle bumper under which the radar sensors are located are covered, improperly painted over or covered with films or similar.
- Sensor calibration is in progress:
  - During the first kilometres of driving with the new car
  - After repair of sensors or systems using sensors

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

- Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
- Do not cover, paint or mask the areas of the vehicle bumper under which the radar sensors are located. Have any damage repaired at a specialist workshop.
- If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Attach the front registration plate on the designated even surface, preferably without using the registration plate bracket. When installing the registration plate, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the particular country.

Passing of radio waves through the windshield

The heated windscreen reduces the transmission of radio waves. For this reason, there are areas on both sides of the interior rear-view mirror bracket cover that allow radio waves to pass through.



Space under the bonnet

Before you open the bonnet

Risk of scalding! Do not open the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the label in the area under the bonnet



Do not touch the area under the bonnet!

Beware of hot parts!

⚠ Beware of rotating parts!

When working in the area under the bonnet

- Keep children well away from the area under the bonnet.
- Observe the safety instructions listed in the chapter on the high-voltage system » *page 168, What you should be mindful of*.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system and on the 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke and keep open flames and sparks near the area under the bonnet.
- Do not leave any objects in the area under the bonnet.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. This is the electrolyte in the 12V vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
- Do not use or check operating fluids with the ignition switched on.
- If your skin is stained by operating fluids, wash the affected areas with warm water and soap. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
- Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12V vehicle battery

Handling the 12V vehicle battery

The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is very caustic. Incorrect handling of the 12V vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12V vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12V vehicle battery, as it may leak the battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Should electrolyte get into your eyes, rinse them immediately with water. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12V vehicle battery.
- Risk of short circuit Do not connect the poles of the 12V vehicle battery.

Using vehicle electrical sockets

Incorrect use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch the sockets that have become warm.
- Protect the sockets from liquids.
- If fluid does enter the power socket, dry it out completely before reusing.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

Before you set off

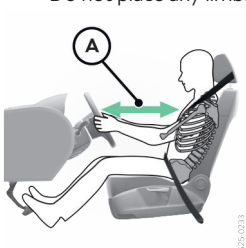
- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
- Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
- Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
- Stop charging and close the charging socket.
- Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Tell your fellow passengers to do the same.
- Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with one seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
- Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

- Do not leave any objects in the driver's footwell. They can get into the pedal area and restrict the pedal control.
- Always fix the floor mats securely in the driver's pedal area.
- Wear footwear that does not interfere with the safe operation of the pedals.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

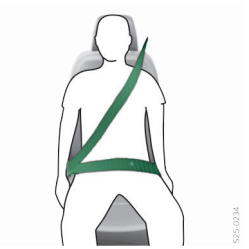
- Adjust the seat backrests to an upright position so that the whole of your back rests on them. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- Keep your feet in the footwell.
- Use the entire seat.
- Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- Do not place any limbs out the window.



- Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance (A) between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least. 25 cm.
- Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important to ensure that the seat belts offer the best possible protection.



- The shoulder belt must run down the centre of the shoulder, not across the neck.
- The shoulder belt must fit snugly against the body (it must not lead over multi-layered loose clothing).
- The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- The webbing must not be pinched or twisted or rub against sharp edges.
- The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects under clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing to adjust the seat belt according to body size.



- For pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that there is no pressure on the abdomen.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



- Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

- Do not carry a child on your lap, and do not secure the child and yourself with one seat belt.
- Only transport children in a suitable child seat » *page 64*.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children who have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. This can result in life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume an incorrect sitting position during the journey, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – if the airbag system triggers, they could be seriously injured or killed.

Child secured in an incorrect sitting position is at risk from the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

Child properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

- Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to fifty times their weight. The 1.5 l water bottle can be ejected with the motion energy equivalent to a mass of 75 kg.

- Transport objects securely.
- Stow items so that they do not restrict the driver's ability to operate the vehicle.
- Keep the driver footwell clear.
- Only use laptops or other mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary.
- Stow small items in the storage boxes.
- Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
- Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage.

- Do not leave closed bottles of liquids in the car. Closed bottles can explode due to heat or burst due to frost.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

- Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
An electric car is hardly audible when driving or stopping. Other road users may not hear it.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Using assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The person using the assist systems is considered to be the driver and road user with full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle.

- Observe the generally applicable legislation in force in your country. The use of some functions may be prohibited or restricted in certain countries.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

- When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
- Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the particular country.

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assistance systems may also be different.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution!

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights of the vehicle and the combination as stated in the vehicle technical documentation (e.g. vehicle registration document, COC document) and on the type plate.
- Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

ⓘ NOTICE

Frequent trips with a trailer impose greater load on the vehicle.

- Have the vehicle checked between service inspections.
- Adjust the tyre pressure of the vehicle for full load operation » page 203.
- Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
- Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer speed.
- When driving with a trailer, take into account the actual load of the vehicle and the load distribution in the trailer. A trailer attachment increases the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle and may thus reduce the weight of the payload.
- Adjust the headlight inclination according to the vehicle load » page 70. The front of the vehicle with the trailer attached may lift and the lights may dazzle other road users.

- If the trailer swerves sideways, reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal. Do not attempt to straighten the vehicle combination by accelerating.
- If you do not have a clear view of the traffic behind the trailer, have additional rear-view mirrors fitted.
- Brake in time. First lightly brake the trailer with the trailer brake, then steadily increase the pressure on the brake pedal. This will eliminate impacts caused by locked trailer wheels when braking.
- Before descending, release the accelerator pedal to use the braking efficiency of regenerative braking » page 130.

Load distribution in the vehicle combination

Load the trailer combination according to the following rule: Heavy vehicle, light trailer.

- Secure heavy objects against shifting, preferably close to the vehicle/trailer axle.
- Carry small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Driving through water

Water must not penetrate into the vehicle systems.

- Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
- Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- Never stop in the water, and do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

- Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.
    - Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely

If the vehicle is not safely secured against moving off, it can do so spontaneously and cause an accident.

- Choose a place with a suitable surface for parking; always park the car on a solid and level surface.
- Pay extra attention on downhill surfaces with reduced grip such as snow, ice, mud or sand.
- Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves or spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts may cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle.

- Injuries can occur when handling seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.
- In emergency situations it may not be possible to leave the vehicle or resolve the situation.
- Very high or very low temperatures may pose a danger to life.
- The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked. This makes it impossible to open the doors or windows from the inside.
    - Turn off the SAFE function, if some persons remain in the locked vehicle » page 46.

Different climatic conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different climatic conditions from those specified, contact a Škoda Partner. They will tell you the following:

- Is it possible to drive the car in your country?
- Are there any measures that need to be taken to ensure that the car is fully functional?
- Do any measures need to be taken to prevent damage to the vehicle, e.g. changing the coolant, the 12V vehicle battery, taking care of the high voltage battery, etc.?

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- This emergency call service is only available in certain countries.
- Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
- Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
  - If none of the supported mobile phone network generations is available, an emergency call cannot be made. Škoda Auto is not responsible for the inability to make an emergency call due to unavailability of the mobile network.
  - If the vehicle is located in a region without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure (availability of supported mobile network and operation centre generations and types), no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre and no call will be made.

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle. The emergency call may be switched on unintentionally.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least 3 years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

- Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

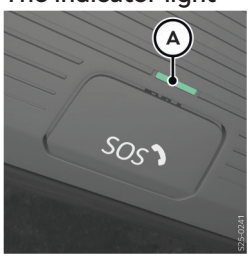
- Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
- Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

- Availability of a supported mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

The indicator light



The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light Ⓐ illuminates.

- Illuminated green - the system in the vehicle is functional and ready for operation.
- Flashing green – a call is in progress with the emergency line.
- Lights up red – there is a error in the system, the SOS indicator light will appear on the instrument cluster. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.
- Flashing red - system fault. The Emergency Call Service is deactivated. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.
- Off – the emergency call service is deactivated or unavailable. If this condition persists, seek assistance from a professional garage.

Emergency call system types

The vehicle may be equipped with two types of emergency call systems described below:

- Emergency call Škoda
- eCall statutory emergency call

Emergency call Škoda

Optional third-party emergency call system.

This system may be part of the Infotainment system of the vehicle and can be deactivated by the user via the settings in the Infotainment system.

Once the connection is established, the call is made to the Škoda emergency line in the language set in the Infotainment system.

If the selected language is not supported in the location, the call to the emergency service provider is made in English.

When the Škoda emergency call system is not functional, unavailable or not supported in the particular country, the call is automatically switched to the eCall statutory emergency call.

Data transfer – After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

- Current position of the vehicle at the time of the emergency call
- Nine other vehicle positions shortly before the emergency call is triggered (driving route)
- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Vehicle drive type
- Vehicle type
- Type of emergency call initiation (automatic or manual)
- Direction in which the car was travelling when the emergency call was triggered
- Direction of the accident
- Reducing vehicle speed in the event of an accident in longitudinal direction
- Reduction of the car speed in the transverse direction in the event of an accident
- Time of activation of the emergency call
- Reliability of position data
- Dataset version
- Counter of records transmitted during a call
- Number of passengers
- Language selected in the Infotainment system
- Optional ID transferred data and customer phone number if enabled in device management.

The vehicle location data is continuously overwritten in the vehicle so that only the last 10 stored positions are available, which are necessary for the correct operation of the emergency call. The car can therefore not be permanently tracked.

The data is only processed to ensure the correct functioning of the emergency call. The data is automatically deleted from the system 13 hours after the emergency call has been initiated.

eCall statutory emergency call

The system uses the 112 emergency number.

This system cannot be deactivated or disabled as it is part of the vehicle mandatory safety equipment according to Regulation (EU) 2015/758 of the European Parliament and of the Council EU 2024/1180.

The language of communication with the emergency call line corresponds to the geographical location of the vehicle.

Data transfer – After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

- Current position of the vehicle at the time of the emergency call
- Two other vehicle positions shortly before the emergency call is triggered (driving route)
- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Vehicle drive type
- Vehicle type
- Type of emergency call initiation (automatic or manual)
- Direction in which the car was travelling when the emergency call was triggered
- Direction of the accident
- Reducing vehicle speed in the event of an accident in longitudinal direction
- Reduction of the car speed in the transverse direction in the event of an accident
- Time of activation of the emergency call
- Reliability of position data
- Dataset version
- Counter of records transmitted during a call
- Number of passengers

The vehicle location data is continuously overwritten in the vehicle so that only the last three stored positions are available, which are necessary for the correct operation of the emergency call. The car can therefore not be permanently tracked.

The data is only processed to ensure the correct functioning of the emergency call. The data is automatically deleted from the system 13 hours after the emergency call has been initiated.

Serious accident – automatic call

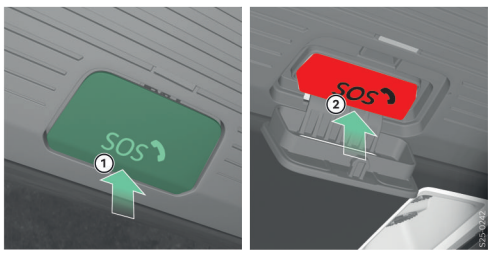
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency line is also initiated when Emergency Assist intervenes.

Minor accident – call option
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or break-down service.

Operation

Manual call
The emergency call button is under the cover marked with the SOS symbol.



1. To **open** the cover, press against it.
2. Keep the SOS button pressed down.
3. Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre on the Infotainment screen.

If you do not confirm the call, the connection to the emergency line will be established automatically after 10 seconds.

To cancel dialling
1. To cancel dialling to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again.

Or:

1. Cancel dialling using the Infotainment system screen.

ⓘ A call can be made manually, for example to report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Closing the cover
1. Push the cover until it clicks audibly.

After an accident

What to do after an accident
Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Use the warning triangle or other legally prescribed warning devices to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

ⓘ If the airbags or seat belt tensioners are activated in an accident, the high-voltage system will be automatically deactivated at the same time.

Safety systems
After an accident, the vehicle's safety systems, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- Have the damaged, loaded or triggered safety system components replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire
Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Use the warning triangle or other legally prescribed warning devices to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not attempt to extinguish the fire yourself.
- Do not stay near the burning vehicle.

Key, locks and alarm

Key

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) can lock the vehicle, switch on the ignition or use electrical equipment such as the control buttons for the windows.

- When leaving the vehicle, keep the keys with you.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key clean.

Overview



- **Pressing**: locking the vehicle
  Holding: closing the windows
- Operating the boot lid
- **Pressing**: unlocking the vehicle
  Holding: opening the windows

Ⓐ Battery status warning light in the key
Ⓑ Locking button for removing the key part

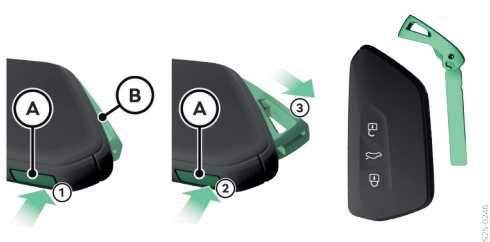
ⓘ The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m.

Restrictions

The function and range of the SmartKey may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- Key signal interference from other transmitters
- Covering the key with a phone, laptop or similar
- Inserting the key into the case with the metal parts

Removing the key part



1. Press the Ⓐ safety button.
   The Ⓑ key fob folds out.
2. Press the Ⓐ safety button again.
3. Remove the key part.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

Possible causes:

- Discharged key battery
- Unsynchronised key
- Key fault
- Discharged 12V vehicle battery
- Central locking fault

ⓘ If the battery is discharged:
The warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed.
The display in the instrument cluster shows a message that the battery needs to be replaced.

Possible solutions:

- Replacing the key battery *» page 42, Self-help*
- Key synchronisation *» page 42, Self-help*
- Emergency locking of the vehicle *» page 42, Self-help*
- Mechanically unlocking and locking the door *» page 47, Mechanically unlocking and locking the door*

- Seeking assistance from a specialist garage

Loss of key

1. Contact your Škoda Service Partner who will provide you with a replacement key.

Self-help

Key synchronisation

1. Press any button on the key.
2. Unlock the door with the key via the locking cylinder within 1 min. *» page 47, Mechanically unlocking and locking the door*.

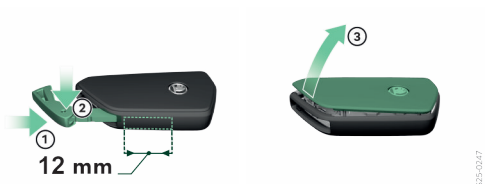
If necessary, the key must be synchronised if a button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the remote control's effective range.

Emergency locking of the vehicle

1. Close all doors and the boot lid and the bonnet.
2. Take the driver's seat.
3. Lock the vehicle with the central locking button.
4. Get out of the vehicle and close the doors.
5. Lock the driver's door mechanically *» page 47*.
6. Check that the vehicle is locked.

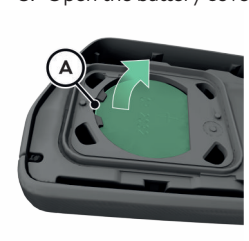
Replacing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery



Removing the battery cover:

1. Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.
2. Push downwards against the key fob to release the top cover.
3. Open the battery cover.



Replacing the battery:

1. Insert a thin screwdriver into the Ⓐ hole and remove the battery.
2. Reset the key by pressing any button.
3. Insert the new battery.
4. Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

In case the battery is swallowed or enters any part of the body, within a very short period (a maximum of 2 hours) it may cause severe or even fatal injury due to suffocation or internal burns.

- If it is suspected that a battery has been swallowed or penetrated inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.
- Always keep children away from the vehicle key.

If you are unsure about how the battery should be replaced, we recommend contacting your Škoda Service Partner.

Environment

- Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
- Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Digital key

Use

The digital key replaces the physical key. Once activated and stored in a compatible mobile device (mobile phone, smart watch), it enables the vehicle to be unlocked and locked and the ignition to be switched on.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) can lock the vehicle, switch on the ignition or use electrical equipment such as the control buttons for the windows.

- When leaving the vehicle, carry all devices with activated digital keys with you.

When using digital keys, follow the instructions and information that is displayed on the infotainment system and in MyŠkoda app.

Make sure that mobile devices used with digital keys are always sufficiently charged.

Operating the vehicle without a physical key

If only the digital key is used, the vehicle cannot be unlocked and locked in an emergency, for example if the 12 V battery or the battery of a mobile device is

discharged. We recommend always carrying the key shank » page 41 with you.

Different object, e.g. a flat-blade screwdriver, can be used for the following operations.

- Switching passenger front airbag on/off
- Removing the rear cap of the hole for screwing on the towing eye

Functionality

The communication between the vehicle and a mobile device uses Bluetooth/UWB or NFC wireless communication technologies.

The compatibility of the mobile device and the wireless communication technology can be checked with the mobile device manufacturer.

The vehicle is equipped with a temporary access card which, once activated, serves as a temporary digital key in the event of a breakdown, when visiting a specialist workshop or for valet parking. Once the card is activated, you can unlock, lock and switch on the ignition. The card uses technology NFC.

Bluetooth/UWB

The communication takes place contactlessly without the need to actively use a mobile device.

NFC sensor.

The mobile device or temporary access card must be attached to the NFC sensor on the » page 43 handle or placed in the box with Phone box » page 210 function.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is equipped with digital key function.
- The mobile device is compatible, uses Bluetooth/UWB or NFC technology.
- The main user is registered in the infotainment.
- Škoda Connect services are active.
- A main user has been created in MyŠkoda app.
- The digital key is activated.

There is no need to connect a mobile device or vehicle to the Internet to use an activated digital key.

Operation

Unlocking/locking with KESSY

The following information applies to active Bluetooth/UWB .

1. Follow the instructions for keyless locking (KESSY) » page 47.

When the mobile device is discharged or switched off, contactless access is not available, but the vehicle can still be unlocked and locked by touching the mobile device to NFC sensor on handle.

Unlocking/locking with the digital wallet

The vehicle can be unlocked or locked in the digital wallet app.

The distance from the vehicle to control unlocking and locking in the digital wallet depends on the Bluetooth range of your mobile device.

When the mobile device is discharged or switched off, contactless access is not available, but the vehicle can still be unlocked and locked by touching the mobile device to NFC sensor on handle.

Unlocking/locking by touching to NFC sensor



1. Put the mobile device or temporary access card onto the marked area on the driver's door handle.

You can verify the location of the NFC chip in your mobile phone with its manufacturer.

NFC technology allows short-term use of the digital key, even if the battery of the mobile device is low. The availability and duration of use of this function depends on the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Restrictions

The function and range of the digital SmartKey may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- Interference of the mobile device signal by other transmitters
- Covering the mobile device with a laptop or similar
- Inserting the mobile device into the case with credit cards or metal parts

Settings

Creating a master digital key

The vehicle is delivered ex works without a digital key being created.

The creation will also activate the key.

Conditions for creating a digital key:
- Ignition is on.
- The mobile phone is connected to the internet.
- The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- The main user is logged in the infotainment system.
- Škoda Connect services are available.
- A primary user account is created in the MyŠkoda application.

To create a key, you can use any of the following:

In the infotainment screen:
1. Press > > *Key*.

   QR-code is displayed.
2. Scan QR-code displayed on the infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
3. Follow the instructions on your mobile phone screen

In the MyŠkoda application:
1. Open “Profile”.
2. Press “Digital Key”.
3. Follow the instructions in the app.

From email:
After the creation of the main user of the vehicle and if all the conditions for creating a key are met, an email with a link is sent to the main user.
1. Open the e-mail on your mobile phone.
2. Open the link.
3. Follow the instructions on your mobile phone.

Sharing a digital key
After creating the main key, you can create and share keys for one vehicle with up to four other users in the digital wallet of the main user’s mobile phone.

Sending the key:
1. Select “Share Key” in the main user's mobile phone digital wallet and follow the instructions.

   The following can also be set:
   - Activation password
   - Authorisation to only unlock and lock the vehicle/Full authorisation including driving the vehicle

Key acceptance:
1. On the recipient’s mobile device, open the shared key link and follow the instructions.

ⓘ You can manage keys for multiple vehicles on your mobile phone.

Deleting digital keys in the digital wallet
The main user can delete both the master key and the shared keys via the wallet.

If the master key is deleted, the user will receive an email with the option to return the key to the wallet or upload it to another phone.

The deleted shared key remains activated until the vehicle is stopped and locked. After locking the vehicle, the vehicle can be unlocked, the ignition switched on and used until the next stop and the next time the vehicle is locked for approximately 10 minutes.

The shared key is not completely deleted until approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since it locking, or the ignition is switched on with a physical key. The key can then no longer be used. Users whose key has been deleted will receive a notification.

The recipient of the shared key can delete the key in their wallet, the main user will receive deletion information.

ⓘ Resetting the mobile phone to the factory settings erases all keys.

Deleting a digital key on the infotainment system
The main user can delete the master key and shared keys either individually or all at once. Deleting the master key also deletes all shared keys.

1. Press > > *Key Key* > *management*.
2. Select the entry for the master key or shared keys.

ⓘ Restoring the infotainment system factory settings or changing the main user deletes all keys.

Deactivating/activating digital keys on the infotainment system
Conditions for deactivation/activation:
- The vehicle is unlocked with the physical key.
- Ignition is on.
- The main user is logged in the infotainment system.

1. Press > > *Key Key* > *management*.
2. Select *Keep digital key active*.

After key deactivation, all keys are retained. Only the functions of the key are deactivated.

ⓘ The time for which the generated keys are deactivated does not affect their expiry date.

Automatic deactivation of digital keys

Each key is automatically deactivated 5 years after activation. It must then be reactivated. If the main user is changed, this period is reset.

ⓘ The main user receives a notification before the key expires automatically.

Transfer of the main digital key to a new mobile phone

If it is necessary to transfer the digital key to a new mobile phone as the main user, proceed as follows in the infotainment system:

1. Press > > *Key* > > *Key management Digital master key*.
2. Select *Transfer* and follow the instructions on the infotainment system.

Activate/deactivate temporary access card

Activation conditions:

- The main user's mobile phone with activated digital key

Activation:

1. Unlock the vehicle with a digital key.
2. Keep your mobile phone in the vehicle interior *(applies to active Bluetooth/UWB)* .

   Or:

   Place the mobile phone in box with Phone box *(applies to NFC)* function.
3. Switch on the ignition with the digital key.
4. Remove the mobile phone from box with Phone box *(applies to NFC)* function.
5. Place the card in Phone box function box in the middle of the marked wireless charging area and follow the instructions on the infotainment display.

Make sure that the card is only activated when it is required.

Deactivation:

1. Switch on the ignition using the physical key or the digital key on the mobile device.

If necessary, the card can be reactivated and used again.

ⓘ Keep the deactivated card in the vehicle so that all users of the digital key can activate it if necessary.

MyŠkoda application functions

The main user can use the following functions in the application:

- Viewing the status and deactivating the temporary access card
- Display of the main digital key status
- Disconnect main user (delete all keys)

Troubleshooting

Contactless unlocking and locking inoperative

1. Follow the instructions for keyless locking (KESSY) » *page 49, Troubleshooting*.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function may be deactivated automatically to protect the 12V vehicle battery from discharging.

No key found when the ignition is switched on

illuminated

Message: No key found in the vehicle

Possible causes:

- The mobile device is not in the vehicle.
- The battery in the mobile device is low.
- The mobile device does not contain a valid digital key.
- The mobile device is in flight mode.
- Bluetooth/UWB or NFC technology is not available.

Possible solutions:

- Place the mobile device in the vehicle interior *(applies to active Bluetooth/UWB)* .
- Place or check the mobile device in the box with Phone box *(applies to NFC)* function.
- Check whether the digital key meets all requirements.
- Check the mobile device settings.
- Use the physical key.
- If the defect occurs again, seek assistance from a specialist service.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked

Possible causes:

- Low battery in mobile device
- Mobile device malfunction
- Discharged 12V vehicle battery
- Central locking fault

Possible solutions:

- Putting the mobile device onto the NFC sensor on the driver's door handle

- Emergency locking of the vehicle » page 42, Self-help
- Mechanically unlocking and locking the door » page 47, Mechanically unlocking and locking the door
- Seeking assistance from a specialist garage

Locking the vehicle without switching on the SAFE function

When using the digital key, the function can only be SAFE turned off by deactivating the » page 50 interior space monitoring function.

Digital key not deleted after change of owner

If you are buying or selling a vehicle, the digital keys already installed cannot be transferred to the buyer. In this case, delete all digital keys.

Reset the infotainment to factory settings and register as a new main user of vehicle » page 89, » page 122.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system simultaneously unlocks and locks all doors, the charging socket cover and the boot lid.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

ⓘ If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include SAFE function.

SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the vehicle.

SAFE function is automatically activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster screen.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with SAFE function activated.

Switching off SAFE function

- Two locking commands via the 🔒 key button within 2 s

Or:

- Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring » page 50, Settings

If SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking and unlocking

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

All doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the speed of 15 km/h is reached. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the 🔒 symbol in the central locking button.

You can also unlock the car in one of the following ways:

- Open some of the doors from the inside.
- Press the central locking button

The vehicle will unlock automatically in an accident when the airbags are activated. Automatic unlocking allows help to access the car in an emergency situation.

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

- Key
- Digital key » page 42
- Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 47
- Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

1. Press the 🔒 button on the centre console

   The 🔒 symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks or unlocks all the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING
A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Settings

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Central locking*.

All doors
All doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover unlock.

Driver's door
The 🔓 button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

The following information applies to vehicles with a keyless locking system.

Gripping the driver's door handle unlocks the driver's door and the charging socket cover. The other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked when you grip the door handle again.

Holding any other handle unlocks all the doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover.

Vehicle side
The 🔓 button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key or digital key is located and the charging socket cover are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

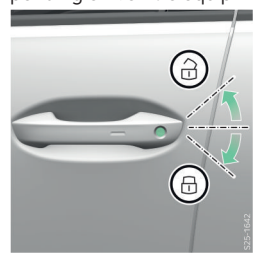
Troubleshooting

Central locking fault
1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ The door can be unlocked or locked mechanically » page 47.

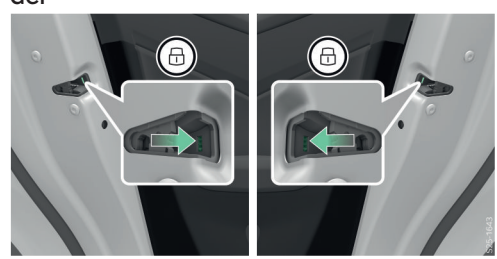
Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder
ⓘ When to door is opened, an alarm is activated (depending on vehicle equipment).



1. Insert the key part into the lock cylinder so that the key fob faces the rear of the car.
2. Unlock or lock (check whether the vehicle is locked).

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
3. Use the key part or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.
4. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

ⓘ The door can be opened from the inside if the child lock is not engaged.

Opening a locked door with the child lock engaged
1. Pull the inner door handle.
2. Open the door from outside.

Keyless locking

Use
The keyless locking system (KESSY) allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using the key.

Operating conditions

- You have the key to the vehicle with you.

  Or:

  You have a mobile device with an activated digital key with you *(applies to active Bluetooth/ UWB)* .
- The function is activated.

Operation

The sensors on the handle are designed to be operated with the bare hand.

ⓘ When using the functions of automatic unlocking when the key is close to the car and automatic locking when leaving the car, the battery in the key discharges faster.

Unlocking



1. Hold the door handle.
2. Open the door.

Locking



1. Touch the sensor.

   After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Auto-unlocking when approaching the vehicle

If the vehicle is equipped with this function and the function is enabled, it will unlock automatically when the key or digital key is brought close to the vehicle.

ⓘ If individual doors or doors on one side of the vehicle are set to unlock, the vehicle will not unlock when the key or digital key is in the vicinity of the rear of the vehicle.

Automatic locking when leaving the car

If the vehicle is equipped with this function and the function is enabled, it will lock automatically when the key or digital key is brought farther from the vehicle.

The direction indicator lights flash once to confirm that the car is locked.

If the turn signals do not flash, the vehicle does not lock, the range of the key or digital key is limited or the battery in the key is discharged.

If the turn signals do not flash and in addition an acoustic signal sounds twice, the vehicle does not lock, not all doors are closed or there is another key or digital key in the vehicle.

ⓘ If there are people in the locked car and they open the door from the inside 30 seconds after locking it, the alarm is triggered.

The following information applies to vehicles equipped with the SAFE function.

After automatic locking, when the key or digital key is removed from the vehicle, SAFE function is deactivated.

A beep sounds once to confirm that the vehicle is locked and the SAFE function is deactivated.

Unlocking the boot lid

1. Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against accidental locking of the key or digital key in the vehicle

If you lock the key or digital key in the vehicle, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If you lock the key or digital key in the boot, you can open the boot lid within 2 minutes.

ⓘ If you lock the key or digital key in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment and it is covered by a phone, laptop or similar device, the key signal may be obscured and the vehicle will not unlock automatically.

Restrictions

The function of the sensors may be restricted, e.g. in the following cases:

- Operation in gloves
- Soiled handles

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.

2. Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

   Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
3. To check deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the outer door handle.

   The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanent deactivation of keyless locking

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Opening and closing* > *KESSY active*.

Activating/deactivating automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

Activation/deactivation of automatic locking when leaving the car

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* > *Lock vehicle when walking away*.

Troubleshooting

Non-functioning keyless locking

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.

   Or:

   Unlock or lock the vehicle by touching the mobile device to the NFC sensor.

   Or:

   Unlock or lock the vehicle with the digital wallet.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function may be deactivated automatically to protect the 12V vehicle battery from discharging. The function will be accessible on the driver's door handle only.

No key found when the ignition is switched on

illuminated
Message: No key found in the vehicle

Possible solutions for the physical key:

- Insert the key into the interior of the vehicle.
- If the key is in the box with Phone box function that is charging your phone, remove the key from the box.

Possible solutions for the digital key:

- Place the mobile device into the interior of the vehicle.
- Place the mobile device in Phone box function box.

Alarm

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is automatically activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

- Opening the bonnet
- Opening the boot lid
- Opening the door
- Towing the vehicle
- Movement inside the vehicle
- Sudden and significant voltage drop in the vehicle's power network.
- The trailer is disconnected
- Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder
- Rear window is broken

Switching off the triggered alarm

1. Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

1. Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

The alarm system will only operate correctly when all the windows are closed.

The trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing bracket.
- The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
- The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm, a warning alarm will sound.

ⓘ Deactivate the alarm before connecting or disconnecting the trailer.

Settings

The following alarm functions can be deactivated at the same time:

- Interior monitoring
- Towing alert

Deactivation also disables SAFE function **» page 46, *Functionality***.

Deactivation

1. Press twice the button on the key within 2 seconds.

Or:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Opening and closing* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Opening and closing* item and deactivate interior monitoring function.

The deactivated functions are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Troubleshooting

Alarm fault

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Doors, windows and the boot lid

Doors

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

A badly closed door can open while you are driving.

- Pull over, close the door and check that it is fully closed and secure.

⚠ WARNING

An open door may close in strong winds or on a gradient even if it is partially secured by the door limiter.

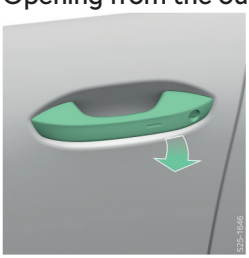
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Only operate the door when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area.

Operation

Opening from the outside



1. Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle.

Opening from the inside



1. Pull the inner handle.
2. Push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

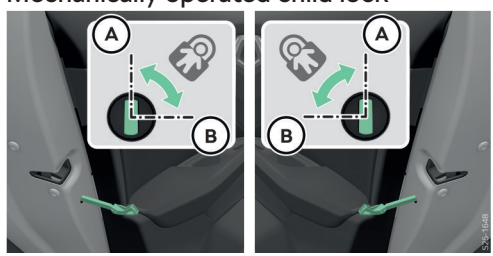
1. Hold the handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The enabled child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child lock



1. Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

   Ⓐ Child lock turned off

   Ⓑ Child lock turned on

Windows – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed again for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted and the window moves back several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, and the obstacle has not been removed, the closing process will be stopped. At this

time, it is not possible to close the windows automatically by pulling the button up completely. However, the force limiter is functional.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, the force limiter will not be functional and the window will close at full force! If you wait more than 10 seconds, the force limiter will be switched on again.

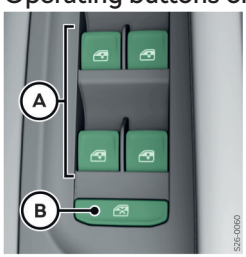
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Although the windows are fitted with a force limiter, exercise caution when closing them.

Overview

Operating buttons on the driver's door



Ⓐ Window control buttons

Ⓑ Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors.

Operation

ℹ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening individual windows

1. Press and hold the respective button lightly until the window opens to the desired position.

Or:

1. Press the control down and the window opens automatically. Pressing the control again will stop the opening process.

Closing individual windows

1. Pull the respective button lightly up and hold it until the window closes to the desired position.

Or:

1. Push up the corresponding control until it stops; the window closes automatically. Pushing the control up again stops the closing process.

ℹ After the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be operated for approximately 10 minutes, until one of the front doors is opened.

Opening all windows simultaneously

1. Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

1. Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button fully depressed down to operate the driver's window.

Closing all windows simultaneously

1. Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

1. Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button all the way up to operate the driver's window.

Or:

1. On vehicles with keyless locking, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle.

Closing he windows is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

Settings

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the window operation item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator stops working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism may be overheated.

1. Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window control does not operate correctly after the disconnection of the 12V vehicle battery

Activate the window operation as follows:

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Push up the respective button and the window closes.
3. Release the button.
4. Push up the button up again and hold it for 1 second.

Sunroof sunshade

What you should be mindful of

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the sunroof sunshade.

In case you activate the control in the closing direction and an obstacle hinders the closing, the sliding of the sunshade stops and the sunshade moves back a few centimetres.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

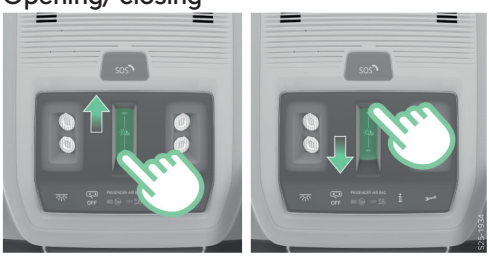
- Although the sunroof sunshade is equipped with a force limiter, it should be closed carefully.

Operating conditions

- Ignition on

Operation

Opening/ closing



Stopping movement

1. Tap .

Resume motion

1. Slide the finger in the desired direction.

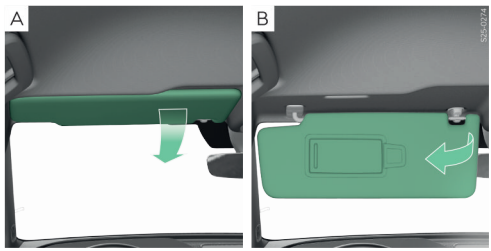
Restrictions

Operation may be restricted, e.g. in the following cases:

- Soiled control panel
- Soiled slide rails

Sun visors

Folding up and down



A Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen.

B Swivel the front visor towards the door.

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

- Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.
- Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.
- Remove snow before opening the lid.

  A larger amount of snow can cause the lid to drop spontaneously.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the lid prop!

- Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.
- Do not touch the strut rods with gloves or other textile objects.
- Do not push against the rods.

Operation

Unlocking



1. Keep the button pressed down.

If the boot lid is not opened within 2 minutes, it is automatically locked again.

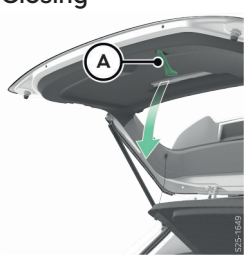
Opening



1. Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



1. Hold the fixture Ⓐ and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of the tailgate opening while driving!

- Make sure the lock is secure when the lid is closed.

Settings

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The lid's automatic locking delay can be extended by a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

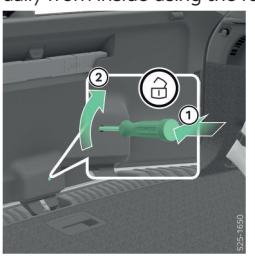
The lid does not respond to the locking signal

1. Observe the instructions about emergency locking of the vehicle » page 42.

Releasing the boot lid

Self-help

If the boot lid does not open, it can be released manually from inside using the following procedure:



1. Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the lid lining
2. Release the boot lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

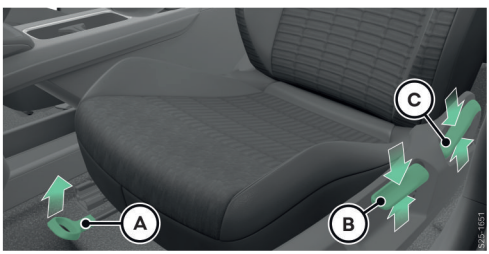
Seats, steering wheel and mirrors

Front seat – with manual operation

Settings

⚠ WARNING

- Adjust seats when the vehicle is stationary.



Ⓐ Adjusting in longitudinal direction
The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.

Ⓑ Adjusting the height

Ⓒ Backrest tilt adjustment
Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.

ⓘ After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

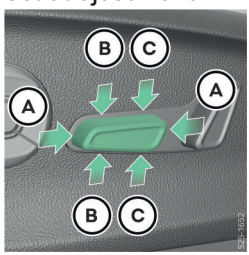
Front seats – with electrical operation

Settings

⚠ WARNING

- Adjust seats when the vehicle is stationary.

Seat adjustment

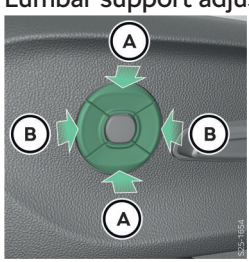


Ⓐ Adjusting in longitudinal direction
Ⓑ Tilt adjustment
Ⓒ Adjusting the height

Backrest tilt adjustment



Lumbar support adjustment



Ⓐ Curvature adjustment
Ⓑ The degree of curvature adjustment

Seat memory

Functionality

The following information applies to vehicles equipped with an electrically operated driver's seat.

Each memory button on the driver's seat allows you to store and then recall a set position for the seat and wing mirrors.

Front seat convenience entry function

The driver seat can be equipped with a convenience entry function, depending on vehicle equipment.

If the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened, the seat is moved to an easy access position.

When the door is closed and the ignition switched on, the seat returns to the original position.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Do not leave your feet in the front seat rail space.

Operation

Location recall

1. If the electronic parking brake is applied, press the desired memory button.

Or:

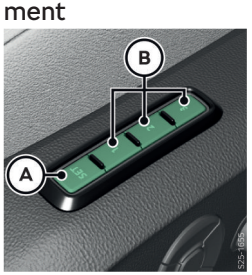
1. If the electronic parking brake is not applied, press and hold the desired memory button.

Stopping a change of position

1. Press any button on the seat being adjusted or on the key, except for the button for adjusting lumbar support.

Settings

Saving the position of the driver's seat and the wing mirrors for forward movement



1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Adjust the seat and the wing mirrors.
3. Press the Ⓐ button and within 10 seconds press one of the Ⓑ memory buttons.

Saving is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

🛈 You can store the seat position if the angle of inclination between the seat and the backrest is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in one of the extreme positions.

Saving the position of wing mirror on the passenger's side for reversing

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. On the infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > *Exterior* > *Mirrors* > *Fold down on reverse*.
3. Switch the wing mirror control to **R** position.
4. Engage reverse gear.
5. Set the mirror to the desired position.
6. Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is stored in memory.

🛈 When changing the saved position of the seat and wing mirrors for forward driving, save the position of the passenger wing mirror for reversing.

Convenience entry function

The function is activated or deactivated in the following manner.

1. On the infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > *Interior* > *Seat*.

Rear seats

Folding down

Before folding down

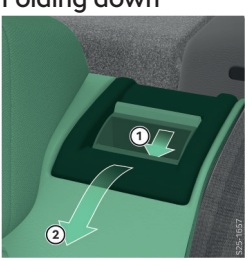
1. Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
2. Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded-down backrests.
3. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

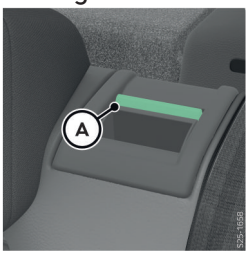
Seat belts must not be fastened when you are handling the backrests.

Folding down



1. Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

Folding backrests back up



1. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
2. Fold the seat backrest back up.

   The release handle should click audibly into place.
3. Check that the backrest is locked in place. The red marking (A) must not be visible.

Headrests

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!

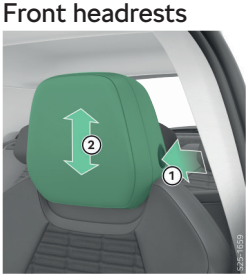
- When the rear seat is occupied, the headrest must not be in the lower position.
- Adjust the headrest to a locked position so that its upper edge is as level as possible with the top of the head.

This is indicated by the following sticker on the sidewall below the tailgate lock:



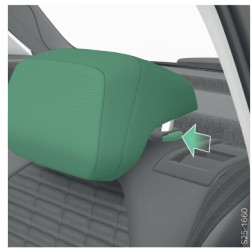
Settings

Front headrests



1. Press the safety catch and hold it.
2. Move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests



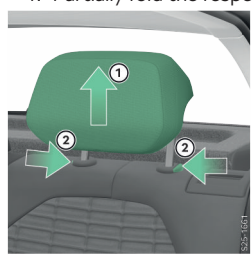
1. Move the headrest in the desired direction.

   To move down, hold down the safety catch.

Removing and inserting

Removing the rear headrests

1. Partially fold the respective backrest down.



1. Move the headrest up to the stop.
2. Press the locking buttons and at the same time remove the headrest.

Inserting the rear headrests

1. Insert the headrest into the backrest.

   The locking button must click audibly into place.

Rear armrest

Folding up and down



1. Fold down the armrest.

   The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

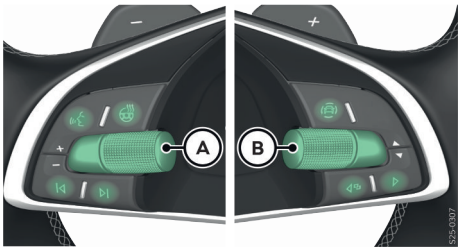
- Handle the armrest with care.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not sit on the armrest.

Steering wheel

Overview



Tapping: switching the voice control on/off
Holding: switching voice control on/off for mobile apps connected via SmartLink

Steering wheel heating » page 85

(A) **Turning**: adjusting the volume
Tapping: switching the sound on/off

Switching to the next track/station played

Switching to the previous track/station played

Switching some assist systems

(B) **Turning**: switching/setting
Pressing: confirming

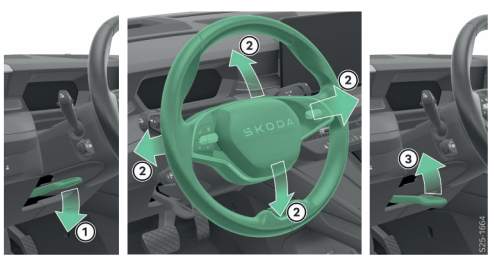
The (B), , and buttons are used for controlling the digital cockpit » page 86.

Settings

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- The steering wheel position can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



1. Pull the safety lever downwards.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering fault

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue driving!
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminates – partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine again and drive a few metres.
2. If the indicator light does not go out, you may continue driving exercising appropriate caution.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock fault

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Once the ignition has been switched off, it is no longer possible to switch on ignition, lock the steering or switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not active

flashing
Message indicating the required steering wheel movement

1. Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
2. If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle safely.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interior mirror

Functionality

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled by the sensors in the mirror.

The mirror will not darken in the following cases:

- Selected automatic gearbox mode **R**
- Front reading lights switched on

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

- Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the control



L Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switching off operation
R Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
Folding the mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different control position)
Heating the mirrors with the ignition switched on (to switch off the heating, select a different position of the regulator)

Adjusting the mirror surface

1. Select the position **L** or **R**.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

The vehicle is not necessarily locked when the mirrors fold in. Vehicle locking is indicated by flashing turn signal lights.

Synchronous mirror glass adjustment

If this function is activated when the driver's mirror glass is being adjusted, the passenger's mirror glass will also be adjusted.

Mirrors with memory

The following information applies to vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver's seat.

You can store the current settings of the exterior mirror glass in the driver's seat memory » *page 56*.

Folding the passenger's mirror glass when reversing

The following information applies to vehicles with an electrically adjustable driver's seat.

For better visibility when reversing, the passenger's mirror will fold down to the position stored in the driver's seat memory » *page 56*.

Operating conditions:

- The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
- The mirror position is stored in memory.
- The reverse gear is engaged.
- The mirror control is in **R** position.

The mirror automatically returns to the default setting when the vehicle is driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.

- Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance of vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of mirror damage!

- If the electrically foldable mirror is accidentally knocked out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible click.

Settings

Synchronized setting of mirror glass and folding the passenger mirror when reversing can be activated or deactivated in the following way:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the *Mirrors* item and activate or deactivate the feature.

Automatic folding of mirrors can be activated or deactivated in the following way:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.

2. Select the item to open and close by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Mirrors fold in when locking* and activate or deactivate the function.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the electric mirror glass control

1. Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of getting burned!

- Do not touch the heated exterior mirror glass.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Use

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt if it is pulled suddenly. The belts lock, for example, during sudden braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled suddenly, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Belt tensioners on the front and rear seat belt retractors increase the safety of the **belted up** driver, the front passenger and the rear seat passengers wearing their seat belts.

During a collision of certain force, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner to prevent unwanted body movement.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a **light** collision or an accident, in which no major forces are produced.

🛈 Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioners

Vehicles with Proactive Passenger Protection are equipped with reversible belt tensioners .

Reversible belt tensioners increase the safety of the belted driver and passenger by automatically pulling the seat belt towards the body and then releasing it in critical driving situations.

Belt tightening can also occur, for example, after the car starts moving or when driving slowly in a traffic jam.

Signalling of indicator lights on the instrument cluster screen


illuminates or flashes – unfastened seat belt at the front or rear


Illuminated – driver seat belt not routed correctly

The camera in the inside mirror evaluates the correct routing of the seat belt.

If the seat belt is correctly routed and indicator light is illuminated, proceed as follows.

1. Check that the seat belt is not covered, e.g. by clothing.
2. Clean the rear view mirror.
3. Adjust the rear view mirror correctly.
4. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Seat occupancy indicator and seat belt buckle closed

A display in the instrument cluster indicates that the seats are occupied and the seat belts are fastened.



- Green – seat occupied, seat belt fastened.
- Red – seat occupied, seat belt not fastened.
- Grey – seat not occupied.
- Yellow – the driver's seat is occupied, the seat belt is not routed correctly.

⚠ WARNING

The system may not detect passengers weighing less than 35 kg.

- Always check that passengers are wearing their seat belt correctly before driving.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



1. Hold the lock tongue and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
2. Insert the lock tongue into the buckle until there is an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to ensure that the lock tongue is securely fastened.

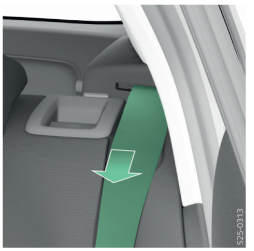
Unfastening the seat belt



1. Hold the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
2. Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



1. Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
2. Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
3. Pull on the strap to check if the retractor is working properly.
4. If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
5. If the strap is still blocked, seek help from a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX/i-Size.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX/i-Size.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations UN R 44 and UN R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards UN R 44 and UN R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and they comply with the UN R 129 regulation.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.

- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When fitting a child car seat, avoid contact between the child car seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

- When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.
- For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat in the front passenger seat

When using a child seat in the passenger seat, all country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

- Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, which is protected by an active airbag in front of the child.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



A Sticker on the front passenger's sun visor

B Sticker on the centre pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat in the front passenger seat:

- When using a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag » page 69.
- When fitting a group 2 and 3 child seat on the front passenger seat, the backrest must be partially folded back.

  If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is stable contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and another child seat that may be placed behind it.
- Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the child being transported!

- For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- Make sure that the seat belt routes smoothly through the grommet of the child vehicle seat and that it is not bent over the edge of the grommet.

⚠ WARNING

- Activate the front passenger airbag when you are no longer using a rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat.

The following information applies to Taiwan.

In accordance with the legal regulations, toddlers, infants and children are not allowed to sit in the front seat. This is indicated by the following sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Classification into groups

Child seats are divided into groups according to the UN R 129 regulation. The UN R 129 regulation classifies the child seats based on the child's height.

Group 0/0+

Child car seats designed for rearward-facing transport from birth up to approximately 24 months of age, corresponding to a child's height of approximately 40–87 cm.

Group 0+/1

Child car seats designed for transport from birth to approximately 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 40–105 cm.

A child up to 76 cm tall must be transported with his/her back against the direction of travel.

Group 1

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 4 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 61–105 cm.

A child up to 76 cm tall must be transported with his/her back against the direction of travel.

Group 1/2

Child car seats designed for transport from 15 months of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 76–135 cm.

Group 2

Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 7 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 100–135 cm.

Group 3

Child car seats designed for transport from 3.5 years of age up to 12 years, corresponding to a child height of approximately 125–150 cm. For transportation on a booster seat, the height of the child must be at least 125 cm.

Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles, they are approved for these vehicles and comply with the UN R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the Škoda website.

For optimum protection, it is recommended to use Group 2 and 3 child seats with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child seat is equipped with the same.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

No seat is suitable for a sideways oriented child seat (L1/L2) and for child seats with the lower tether system (bottom attachment points).

An overview of the usability of child seats in accordance with the UN R 16 regulation:

Child seat			Passenger seat [a]	
Size class		Child seat orientation	With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
Group **0**	40–75 cm (up to 10 kg)	Rear-facing	X	U/I
Group **0+**	40–87 cm (up to 13 kg)	Rear-facing	X	U/I
Group **1**	61–105 cm (9-18 kg)	Rear-facing	X	U/I
	76–105 cm (9-18 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	X
Group **2**	100–135 cm (15-25 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	X
Group **3**	125–150 cm (22-36 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	X
i-Size		Rear-facing	X	U/I
		Forward-facing	U/I	X
Booster seat		Forward-facing	U/I	X

[a] Adjust the height-adjustable seat as high as possible.

"U" The seat is suitable only for attaching universal category child seats with a safety belt.

"I" The seat is suitable only for attaching child seats with the ISOFIX system.

"X" The seat is not suitable for a child seat.

Child seat			Rear seats	
Size class		Child seat orientation	Outer	Centre
Group **0**	40–75 cm (up to 10 kg)	Rear-facing	U/I	U
Group **0+**	40–87 cm (up to 13 kg)	Rear-facing	U/I	U
Group **1**	61–105 cm (9–18 kg)	Rear-facing	U/I	U
	76–105 cm (9–18 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	U
Group **2**	100–135 cm (15–25 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	U
Group **3**	125–150 cm (22–36 kg)	Forward-facing	U/I	U
i-Size		Rear-facing	U/I	X
		Forward-facing		
Booster seat		Forward-facing	U/I	X

"U" The seat is suitable only for attaching universal category child seats with a safety belt.

"I" The seat is suitable only for attaching child seats with the ISOFIX system.

"X" The seat is not suitable for a child seat.

Assigning size classes to ISOFIX/i-Size classes

Size class	ISOFIX/i-Size class
Group **0**	ISO R1
Group **0+**	ISO R1/R2/R3
Group **1**	ISO R2/R3 rear-facing
	ISO F2/F2X/F3 forward-facing
Booster seat	ISO B2/B3

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter ***» page 62, What you should be mindful of***.

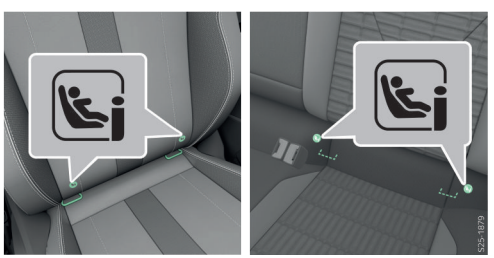
ISOFIX/i-Size

The ISOFIX/i-Size system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The retaining rings for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX/i-Size system are located on the outer rear seats and/or on the passenger seat.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not attach any other child seats, belts, or objects to the retaining rings used for installing a child seat with the ISOFIX/i-Size system.

The i-Size child seat may be installed on seats suitable for child seats with the ISOFIX/i-Size system. In exceptional cases, the use of the i-Size child seat may be restricted, e.g. due to the excessive size of the child seat relative to the size of the vehicle interior. You can only install a child seat with the ISOFIX system in a vehicle if the given vehicle is included in the list provided with the child seat.
Further information can be obtained from the child seat manufacturer's website or from a Škoda Partner.



Retaining rings for the ISOFIX/i-Size system on the passenger / rear seat

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

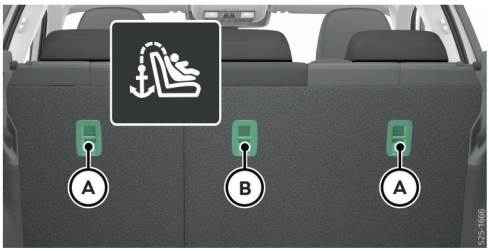
- Child seats with the TOP TETHER system can only be used on seats equipped with mounting retaining rings with the TOP TETHER symbol.
- To mount the TOP TETHER system, only rings with the TOP TETHER symbol can be used.
- Only attach 1 belt of the child seat to the TOP TETHER mounting retaining ring.
- When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object can be attached to the same TOP TETHER retaining ring.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the rear seats

The TOP TETHER strap can be passed between or around the headrest guide bars and attached to the TOP TETHER retaining rings on the back of the seat.





The TOP TETHER belt mounting retaining rings are located on outer rear seats (A) and/or on middle rear seat (B).

Fixing the TOP TETHER system on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER strap can be passed between the headrest guide bars or through the opening in the seat and attached to the TOP TETHER retaining ring.



Option 1



Option 2

Airbags

Use

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection to the seat belts during severe frontal and side collisions.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. It only provides protection when combined with a seat belt and only in this way does it provide maximum protection.

What you should be mindful of

The airbag system can only perform its protective function if all occupants are belted and properly seated.

In some situations, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated » *page 69, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not place your limbs in the airbag deployment area.
- No persons, animals or objects such as » *page 68* cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the front airbags!

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. This can prevent the front airbags from deploying.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive force, e.g. impacts, on the backrests.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by Škoda Auto.
- Any damage to seat covers at the side airbag location must be repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends using seat covers from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!

- The front armrest must be folded down or raised to one of the locked positions when driving.

Functionality

The inflated airbag absorbs the forward movement of the body reducing the risk of injury.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the airbags inflate. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

The airbags **will not deploy** in the following situations:

- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

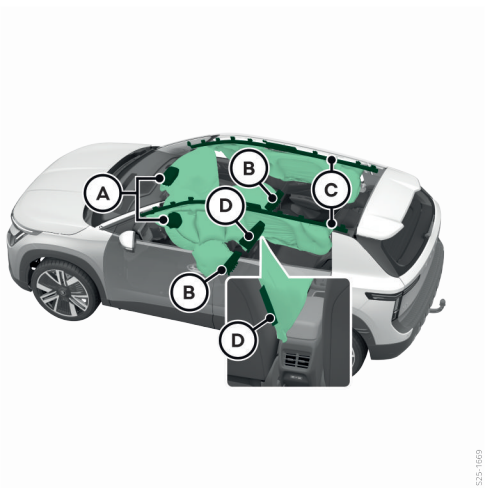
Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

If the airbags are deployed in an accident, the whole vehicle will be unlocked at the same time. Depending on the extent of the damage, you can lock the vehicle after an accident as follows:

1. Open the driver's door and close it again.
2. Lock the vehicle.

Overview

The location of airbags is marked **AIRBAG**.



Ⓐ Front airbags
Ⓑ Side airbags – front
Ⓒ Head airbags
Ⓓ Central airbag between the driver‘s seat and the passenger seat

Operating conditions

- Ignition on

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag *» page 69, Operation* should be deactivated by a Škoda Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

- With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.
- Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

- If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer about this.

Airbag or seat belt retractor deactivated by the diagnostic device

illuminates for 4 s after switching on the ignition and then flashes for 12 s

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

illuminated

Message indicating an airbag fault

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

- If a message indicating an airbag malfunction appears, never install a child car seat on the passenger seat. When a child car seat is installed on the passenger seat, remove it.

Passenger front airbag switch

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

- A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.

- The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of malfunction in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

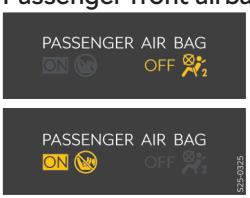
⚠ WARNING

Risk of unexpected activation of the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident!

- After deactivating the passenger airbag with the key part, do not leave the key part inserted in the switch while driving. Shocks may cause the key part to rotate in the notch and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Passenger front airbag status indication



Indicator lights in the overhead panel

- When the ignition is switched on, both indicator lights will illuminate briefly.
- If the system is OK, they will both go out.
- One of the following indicator lights will then come on depending on the position of the switch:

OFF illuminated – passenger front airbag is deactivated

ON illuminates 65 seconds after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag is activated

Operation

Passenger front airbag switch is located on the side of the dashboard.

Switching passenger front airbag on/off



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the passenger door.
3. Insert the spanner shaft or slotted screwdriver into the notch in the switch.
4. To **switch off**, carefully turn the switch to the **OFF** position.

   To **switch on**, carefully turn the switch to the **ON** position.
5. Remove the spanner shaft or slotted screwdriver from the notch.
6. Close the passenger door.
7. Switch on the ignition and check that the passenger's front airbag indicator lights are illuminated.

Troubleshooting

Passenger front airbag switch fault

illuminated on the instrument cluster together with OFF in the overhead panel

The passenger front airbag does not deploy in the event of an accident!

1. Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Automatic mode

When the automatic mode is switched on, the lights automatically adjust to the driving and ambient light conditions.

- Switching parking lights and low beam on/off automatically » *page 71*
- Switching daytime running lights on/off automatically » *page 71*

If the automatic mode is not activated and the system determines that the lights need to be switched on, you will be alerted by the ☼ indicator light illuminating on the instrument cluster.

☼ illuminated

1. Turn on the hazard warning lights.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Automatic mode is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for correct lighting of your vehicle.

- Turn on the lights manually if the current lighting conditions require it.

ⓘ The automatic mode is always switched on after the ignition is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

With some light functions, specific conditions must be met. In such a case, these conditions are indicated with the relevant light function.

Operation

Light switch



☼ Selecting the lights mode
1. Press repeatedly the ☼ button.

Switching bad weather lights on/off » *page 73*

Switching on/off the rear fog light » *page 73*

Light modes

- Automatic mode **AUTO**

  AUTO illuminates in the switch. If the low beam is also switched on automatically, ≡D and D also illuminate in the switch.
- Low beam mode D

  D illuminates in the switch.
- Parking lights mode ≡D

  ≡D illuminates in the switch.
- Switching the lights off **OFF**

ⓘ Information on the selected mode is briefly displayed on the instrument cluster screen.

ⓘ If the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than 10 km/h or covers a distance of more than 100 m, the parking lights mode and switching the lights off mode are not available.

Settings

Headlight range control

The following information applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

1. Press ⌂ > ⊞ > 🚗 > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.

2. Select the item for setting the headlight range.
3. Use the slider to adjust the range of the lights. The range must correspond to the load of the car.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can also be used.

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Headlight range is set automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can result in poor road lighting or can dazzle other road users.
- Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Headlight settings for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Set the feature *Travel mode*.

The following information applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

When driving in countries with oncoming traffic, part of the headlight must be masked to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Defective LED light source

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears on the screen indicating a lighting fault.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Car lighting malfunction

If a message indicating a car lighting malfunction appears, the lights will work in emergency mode.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Daytime running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

It also illuminates the rear compartment in the following cases:

- In poor ambient light conditions
- On vehicles for certain markets

Automatic activation/deactivation

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Operating conditions

- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Automatic activation of lights

Functionality

Switching lights on automatically in low light

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Automatic activation of lights is indicated by illuminating and symbols in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching lights on/off automatically in low light

- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

Depending on the light conditions, the low beam is switched on automatically in rain after no more than 30 seconds provided that the following conditions are met:

- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- The function is activated.
- The wiper control lever is in **LOW**/**HIGH** position.

Settings

The automatic switching on headlights function is set in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. In the displayed menu, set the desired functions.

Troubleshooting

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

illuminated

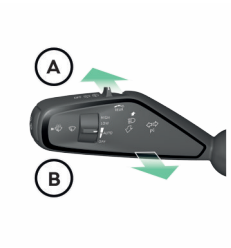
1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operating conditions

- Low beam is switched on.

Operation



Ⓐ Switching on high beam

Ⓑ Switching off high beam / switching on headlight flasher

When the high beam or the headlight flasher are on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

When the high beam assistant is activated while the high beam or headlight flasher are on, will light up on the instrument cluster.

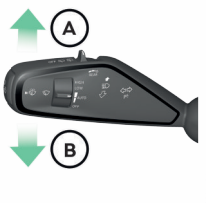
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

- Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



Ⓐ Switching on the right turn signal – flashes on the instrument cluster

Ⓑ Switching on the left turn indicator – flashes on the instrument cluster

Turn signal – convenience turn signal

Convenience turn signal causes the turn signal lights to flash three times without having to move the lever up or down.

1. Tap the control lever up or down.

   The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

   Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Activate or deactivate the *Convenience turn signal* feature in the displayed menu.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster – right turn signal light defective

1. Check the right signal light

flashes faster – left turn signal light defective

1. Check the left signal light

Trailer turn signal light fault

1 does not flash when trailer is connected – trailer indicator turn signal fault

1. Check the trailer lighting.

All weather lights

Use

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

All weather lights are one of the light modes that help to improve road illumination in poor visibility conditions when standard lights lose their effectiveness.

Operation

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.



1. Press the button for all weather lights.

   is illuminated in the switch and on the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

Rear fog light

Operation



1. Press the rear fog light button.

   is illuminated in the switch and on the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

1. To switch on or off, press the ⚠ button on the centre console.

The hazard warning lights may switch on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically during start-up or acceleration.

Switch on the hazard warning lights e.g. in the following situations:

- When traffic slows down suddenly or when you reach the end of a traffic queue.
- When the vehicle is stationary in traffic
- When towing

ⓘ When the hazard warning system is active and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights function

Use

Double parking light

The double parking light function switches on the sidelights when the vehicle is parked.

Single parking light

The single parking light function switches on the sidelights on one side when the vehicle is parked.

Operation

Double parking light

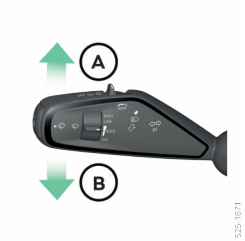
1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the lights mode .
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Lock the vehicle.

ⓘ When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

ⓘ The lights may switch off automatically if the 12V vehicle battery is too low. When turning on the parking lights on both sides with the ignition off, the lights

do not turn off automatically and the 12V vehicle battery may become discharged.

Single parking light



Ⓐ Switch on the sidelights on the right.
Ⓑ Switch on the sidelights on the left.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever to the appropriate position.
3. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

Headlights adaptive function

Use

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The adaptive headlight function ensures that the light path is optimised to suit the current driving situation.

The function also provides better illumination of the cornering area.

Operating conditions

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The following information applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Activate/deactivate the *Dynamic cornering lights* function in the displayed menu.

Coming Home, Leaving Home functions

Functionality

The Coming Home function turns the lights on after the ignition is switched off. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The Leaving Home function turns the lights on when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home functions include an animated turning off and on of the front mask.

If the vehicle is equipped with headlights with adaptive functions and keyless locking (KESSY) with the automatic unlocking function activated, the lights will automatically turn on when the physical/digital key is brought near the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- Visibility has worsened.
- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. In the displayed menu, set the desired functions.

In the *Exterior lighting* item, you can set, for example, the animation of the rear lights.

Light Assist high beam assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- The system is activated.
- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- The driving speed is over 50 km/h.
- Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



1. Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

   in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches the high beam on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Switching off

1. Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Restrictions

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

- The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.
- The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Activate/deactivate the *Light Assistant* function in the displayed menu.

Dynamic Light Assist headlight assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam mode is switched on, it adjusts the light trail to avoid dazzling drivers in oncoming traffic and in vehicles driving in front of you.

When driving in the dark on the motorway, it dims the light trail on the side of the dividing strip to avoid dazzling the drivers in oncoming traffic. These cars might not be recognized by the assistant because their headlights may be obscured by the dividing strip.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- The system is activated.
- The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- The driving speed is over 50 km/h.
- Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



1. Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

   in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches the high beam on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Switching off

1. Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Restrictions

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

- The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.
- The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working. The system can also identify such a vehicle as a single-track vehicle.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Press > > > *Lights* > *Exterior lighting* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Activate/deactivate *Dynamic Light Assist* in the displayed menu.

Interior lighting

Operation

	Front and rear lights on/off
OFF	Deactivating automatic switch-on (lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the respective light.

You can adjust the intensity of the light by holding your finger on it. The set intensity is not stored in the memory when the light is switched off.

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is unlocked
- One of the doors is open
- Switching ignition off

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is locked
- The ignition is switched on
- About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching the footwell lighting on/off

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

It also switches on automatically when the doors are opened, e.g. when getting in or out of the vehicle.

Switching on the make-up mirror illumination in the windscreen sun visors

1. Slide off the make-up mirror cover.

Settings

The display and switch illumination

The intensity of backlighting of displays, switches and the intensity of door handle illumination can be set on the Infotainment system in the following way:



1. Press the bar in the marked place and slide your finger down.
2. Press in the menu displayed.
3. Use the slidersto adjust the backlight intensity.

Footwell illumination

The following applies to cars without ambient lighting.

1. Tap > > > in the Infotainment system.
2. In the displayed menu, use the slider to adjust the light intensity.

On vehicles equipped with background lighting, the footwell lighting is part of the interior background lighting *» page 77, Settings*.

Backlighting of the Infotainment screen and the central console illumination

The following applies to cars without ambient lighting.

You can set the following functions in the Infotainment system:

- The colour of the Infotainment screen backlight:
  - Automatically, based on the selected driving mode.
  - Manually, using the slider
- The intensity of the central console illumination

1. Tap > > > in the Infotainment system.
2. In the displayed menu, set the desired function.

Interior background lighting

Functionality

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

When the vehicle is locked, the lights will briefly turn red.
When the vehicle is unlocked, the illumination will briefly turn green.
When a door is opened, the illumination in the door will turn red to indicate that the door is open.

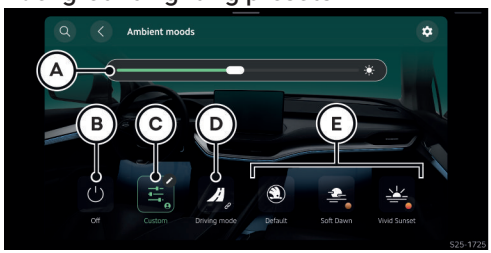
Operating conditions

- Low beam or sidelights are on.

Settings

You can set the background lighting in the Infotainment system menu ⌂ > ⁘ > 🎨.

Background lighting presets



Ⓐ Adjusting the overall lighting intensity

Ⓑ Switching off the lighting

Ⓒ Activating/deactivating user preferences ⚙

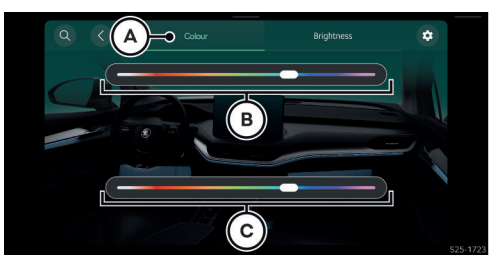
Ⓓ Automatic preset

- The colour and intensity of the lighting automatically change depending on the selected driving mode of the car.

Ⓔ Factory presets

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset ⚙

1. Press ⚙ in the ambient lighting presets menu.
2. Press ✎ on the user preset tile.
3. Select the tab for setting the lighting colours.



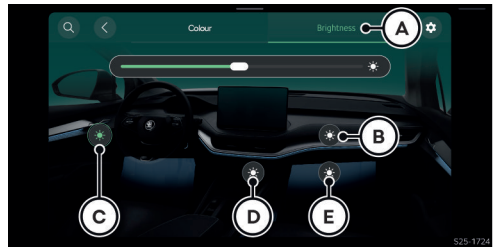
Ⓐ Tab for setting the lighting colours

Ⓑ Slider for setting the dashboard and door lighting colour

Ⓒ Slider for setting the central column lighting colour

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset ⚙

1. Press ⚙ in the ambient lighting presets menu.
2. Press ✎ on the user preset tile.
3. Select the tab for setting the lighting intensity.



Ⓐ The tab for setting the lighting intensity.

Ⓑ Dashboard

Ⓒ Doors

Ⓓ Centre console

Ⓔ Footwell

Wipers and washers

Operating conditions

- Bonnet closed
- Boot lid closed
- Ignition on

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

- Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen and wiper blades!

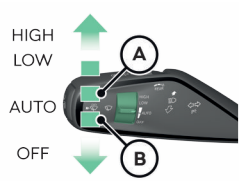
- Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry or frozen.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the wiper blades!
The wiper blades have a graphite coating that ensures a gentle wipe of the glass. The damaged graphite layer causes increased noise and significantly reduces the quality of wiping.

- Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly.
- Replace the damaged wiper blades immediately.
- Do not clean the wiper blades with solvent-based cleaning agents, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects.

Wiping and washing the windscreen





HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

AUTO Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

- Position (A) – higher sensor sensitivity
- Position (B) – lower sensor sensitivity

OFF Switching off

Washing and wiping

- Press to the first position – single windscreen wipe
- Press to the second position – washing and wiping the windscreen

If you open the driver's or passenger's door when the car is stationary with the wipers on, the wiping will be interrupted. If you close the door or move the wiper lever within a few seconds, wiping will resume.

Wiping and washing the rear window



Sprung position

- Washing and wiping the glass
- Washing the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Convenient rear wiper function

If the windscreen wipers wipe continuously, the rear wiper will automatically wipe at regular intervals.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

You can activate or deactivate the comfort automatic rear rain wiper function as follows:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⊞ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers*.
4. Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the climatic conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the washer

- Do not remove the strainer from the neck of the tank when refilling the washer fluid.

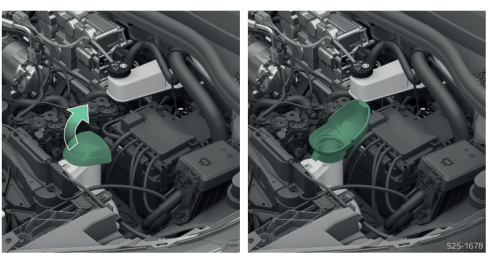
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the area under the bonnet!

- Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the space under the bonnet » page 18.

Tank volume is 3 litres.



1. Open the bonnet » page 189.
2. Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
3. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
4. Close the tank sealing cap.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid too low

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Wipers fault

illuminated

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

illuminated

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Frozen windscreen wipers

1. Carefully detach frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and remove any snow and ice.

Self-help

Folding the wipers away from the windscreen

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the front flap!

- Close the front flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
- Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

In order to fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen, it should first be placed in the service position.



1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. Within 10 seconds, press the button on the control lever in the direction of the arrow to the first position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds.
3. Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.

Or:

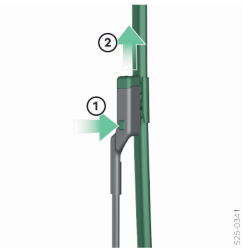
1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers* and then wiper service position.

Replacing a wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

- Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.



1. Press the safety catch and hold it.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Insert the new wiper blade in until it clicks into place.

Folding the wipers back



1. Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on the ignition and press the button on the wiper control lever to the first position.

Heating and air conditioning

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

- It is recommended to use the automatic mode with a set interior temperature of 22 °C to reliably and efficiently achieve the desired conditions in the car interior.
- It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

- Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

- Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Coolant in the air conditioning system

The information about coolant can be found on the label in the compartment under the bonnet.

	Warning: air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
	The coolant is flammable.
	Air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
	Specifications and quantity of coolant
	Lubricating oil specification

Information about the coolant used

Coolant designation	Coolant weight	CO_2 equivalent	Global Warming Potential (GWP)
R1234yf [a)]	0.460 kg	0.0002 t	0.501
R744 [b)]	0.470 kg	0.0005 t	1

[a)] Applies to vehicles without a heat pump.

[b)] Applies to vehicles with a heat pump.

The R1234yf refrigerant in the air conditioning system of vehicles without the heat pump contains fluorinated greenhouse gases.

The fluorinated greenhouse gases are contained in a hermetically sealed device. Installed electrical components have a leakage rate of less than 0.1 % per year.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

The coolant is flammable and can explode when heated. It can produce poisonous gases on contact with hot surfaces.

- Have the air conditioning system serviced only by qualified service technicians trained to the required standard, e.g. SAE J2845.
- Keep the vehicle well away from sources of open flames or sparks.

Functionality

Automatic mode

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature and prevents fogging of the windows.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Cooling system operating conditions:

- ✔ External temperature above 2 °C
- ✔ Fan switched on

- Ignition on

  Or:

  Driver's seat occupied

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Air Care

The following information applies to some countries.

This function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the interior of the car. It also recirculates and cleans the air.

Doors and windows must be closed to ensure proper operation.

"Heaters" function

The function allows you to simultaneously switch on or off the heating of some of the following equipment elements:

- Rear window
- Steering wheel
- Seats

Heating of selected items of the function can be activated/deactivated in the Other air conditioning settings menu » page 82.

Air conditioning economy mode

If a seat is not occupied, Climatronic will adjust the air temperature for that seat to reduce energy consumption.

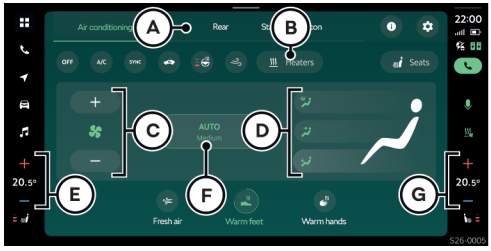
The Infotainment system screen shows Eco.

Overview

1. Press the CLIMA button on the centre console

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⊞ > on the Infotainment system screen.



The location and presence of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on vehicle equipment.

- Ⓐ Rear settings screen
- Ⓑ Switching the "Heaters" function on/off
- Ⓒ Setting the fan speed
- Ⓓ Setting the direction of the air outlet
- Ⓔ Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- Ⓕ Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power
- Ⓖ Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- ⓘ Information on air conditioning
- ⚙ Other air conditioning settings
- **OFF** Switching the air conditioning system on/off
- Switching on/off and adjusting the intensity of the heating of the steering wheel
- Warm air flow to footwell preset
- Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating
- Outdoor air flow to interior preset
- **SYNC** Switching on/off interior temperature maintenance according to the driver's temperature setting (displayed when the temperature on the driver's side changes)
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- **A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- Switching on/off Air Care *(applicable for some countries)*
- Switching the seat heating on/off » page 84

Additional information

ⓘ During charging with alternating current (AC), the air conditioning does not work.
If you want to cool or heat the interior of the vehicle during charging, activate the Instant air conditioning function » page 84.

ⓘ To start the preselect option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

ⓘ When switched on, the air conditioning will start as set before switching off.

ⓘ Switching off the preset also switches off the steering wheel heating. This applies even if the steering wheel heater was manually switched on before the preset was activated.

ⓘ The selected preset is switched on for a limited period of time.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment display:

LO Maximum cooling power

HI Maximum heating power

ⓘ Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the screen at the back of the centre console.

ⓘ Air conditioning system can also be set in the application MyŠkoda » *page 120, Functionality*.

Settings

Other air conditioning settings

1. Tap the ⚙ button in the air conditioning settings menu.

The following menu will appear:

- Activating or deactivating the start function of the stationary air conditioning when the vehicle is unlocked
- Activating/deactivating the automatic activation and intensity setting of the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Steering wheel heating
  - Seat heating

    If this function is activated, the heating will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats or steering wheel and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

    The selected heating intensity will be transposed into the settings for automatic seat heating and steering wheel heating in the independent air conditioning.
- Activation/deactivation of selected items of the “Heaters” function (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Seats
  - Steering wheel
  - Rear window

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

1. Switching on automatic mode.

Or:

1. Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic cooling/heating deactivation

The cooling/heating of the vehicle interior can be switched off or limited automatically in order to ensure the optimum temperature of the high-voltage system.

High concentration of CO_2

The following information applies to vehicles a heat pump.



illuminated
High concentration message CO_2

⚠ DANGER

Risk of accident!
High concentration of CO_2 causes sudden loss of consciousness and suffocation.

- Open all windows immediately!

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Increased concentration of CO_2

The following information applies to vehicles a heat pump.



illuminated
Increased concentration message CO_2

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Increased concentration CO_2 can cause nausea, fatigue and loss of attention for the driver and passengers.

- Open all windows!

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ If the sensor detects an increased or high concentration of CO_2 in the interior of the vehicle:

- The fan speed is automatically increased.
- In a vehicle with the ignition switched off, the fan will automatically switch on

Fault in the CO_2 concentration sensor.

The following information applies to vehicles a heat pump.



illuminated
Air conditioning is not working properly message. Seek a specialist service.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Independent air conditioning

Use

Independent air-conditioning cools, ventilates or heats the interior of a stationary car based on the desired temperature set for the time of departure.

Functionality

Sources for independent air conditioning operation

- Current from a high voltage battery
- Current from a charging station or an electrical outlet

Operation using current from a high-voltage battery

When the vehicle is not being charged, the source for independent air conditioning operation is the current from the high-voltage battery.

When independent air conditioning is on and the vehicle is not being charged, the expected range is reduced.

Operation using current from a charging station or an electrical outlet

If instant air conditioning is switched on when charging with alternating current (AC), the vehicle is air conditioned during charging.

When charging with direct current (DC), the vehicle is air conditioned during charging. When charging is complete, the air conditioning will stop or continue with the current from the high-voltage battery.

If the car is charging while the independent air conditioning is on, the charging power will be reduced.

Automatic activation

The independent air conditioning will switch on automatically based on the set temperature and activated preset.

Automatic deactivation

The independent air conditioning will switch off automatically if one of the following occurs:

- Approximately 15 minutes after the scheduled departure time
- When the high-voltage battery charge is low

Instant air conditioning

Instant air conditioning is used to maintain the temperature in the interior during short-term departure from the vehicle.

Activate the function in one of the following ways:

1. Press > > > *Immediate start* on the infotainment system.

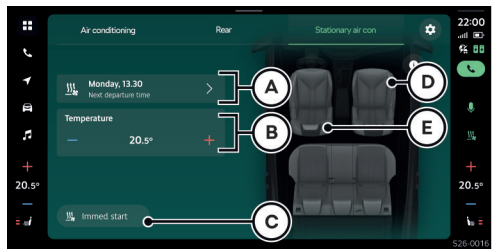
Or:

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Tap in the menu that appears in the Infotainment system.

The function is activated for 30 minutes.

Overview

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.



Ⓐ Displaying the Presets list, preset activation/deactivation

Ⓑ Setting the desired temperature

Ⓒ Activating/deactivating immediate climate control

Ⓓ Switching the passenger's seat heating on/off (depending on vehicle equipment)

Ⓔ Switching the driver's seat and steering wheel heating on/off (depending on vehicle equipment)

Other air conditioning settings

- Activating or deactivating the start function of the stationary air conditioning when the vehicle is unlocked

Operating conditions

The minimum charge level of the high-voltage battery is 20%.

Settings

Preset setting, activation/deactivation

1. Tap in the independent air conditioning setting menu.
2. Select the preset you want to set.

   You can set or enable the following items from the displayed preset:

   - Departure time
   - Day/days of the week
   - Repeat on the selected day/days of the week
3. Activate/deactivate the selected preset.

Setting the seat heating and steering wheel heating intensities

1. Tap > > > in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the heating intensity in the *Switch on at start of journey depending on temperature* menu.

ⓘ Independent auxiliary air conditioning can also be set in MyŠkoda » *page 119* application.

Windows heating

Use

Window heating is used to defrost or defog the glass.

Operating conditions

- Ignition on
- Outside temperature is below approx. 35 °C

Operation

Rear window heating

1. Press the REAR button on the centre console

The windscreen defogging/defrosting mode

1. Press the MAX button on the centre console

Seat heating

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

- Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.
- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  - The seat is not occupied.
  - There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  - There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

Operating conditions

- Ignition on

  Or:

  Driver's seat occupied

  Or:

  Independent air conditioning switched on

Operation

1. To heat the front seats, press or on the Infotainment system screen.

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

The heating intensity is indicated by the number of indicator lights on the Infotainment system screen .

Additional information

ⓘ If the engine is switched off when the heating is running, and it is restarted again within about 10 minutes, the front seat heating will continue as set before the engine was switched off.

ⓘ If you exit the vehicle with the front seat heating switched on, the seat heating for the given seat will switch off. Heating will continue when the seat is occupied again.

Settings

Setting automatic switching on of front seats heating

If this function is activated, the seat heating will switch on depending on the outside temperature and the seat temperature.

1. To activate or deactivate the function, press the CLIMA button on the centre console.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the heating intensity in the *Switch on at start of journey depending on temperature* menu.

Steering wheel heating

Operating conditions

- Ignition on

Operation

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off, or switched on at the intensity that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Digital cockpit

Overview



Ⓐ Screen area with selected information:
- Time
- Indicator lights
- Reports and information
- Outside temperature

  ❄ – low outside temperature

Ⓑ Screen area with selected information:
- Speed
- Indicator lights
- Set level of recuperation
- Set mode of automatic gearbox selector
- High-voltage battery charge status
- Range » page 171
- Driving performance availability indicator » page 172

Ⓒ Display area for driving data/navigation

Ⓓ Display area for assistance systems

Ⓔ Display area for indicator lights

! NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
- When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.
- Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
- Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.
- Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Operation



◁ Expanding the assist systems display area on the left-hand side of the display

To return to the default display, press ▷.

▷ Switching/expanding the driving data and navigation display area on the right-hand side of the display

To return to the default display, press ◁.

Settings

Setting the language

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.

Setting the time

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the dipped beam is switched on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the infotainment system by pressing ⌂ > ⁘ > 🚗 > *Display*.

Driving data

Overview

The following data is displayed on the Infotainment system screen:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed

Average fuel consumption

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

From the start

- Driving data from the time when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

- Driving data of all trips up to a total of 999,999 h driving time or 9,999 km driving distance are stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From charging

- Driving data from the last charging is stored in the memory. The next charging will reset the memory.

Operation

Displaying and resetting the driving data memory on the instrument cluster screen via the multifunction steering wheel



▷ **Pressing**: displaying the driving data menu

Ⓐ **Pressing**: switching the driving data memory

Holding: resetting the driving data memory

Displaying driving data in the Infotainment system

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗.

Selecting the Infotainment system memory

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗.
2. Select the required memory type.

Resetting the Infotainment system memory

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > ↺.
2. Reset the selected memory.

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗.
2. Pressing the **0.0** resets the relevant memory.

ⓘ Resetting the long-term memory also clears (resets) the range calculation data.

Settings

Setting units

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.

Vehicle status

Functionality

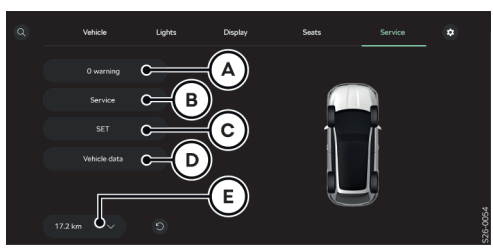
In the event of a system fault, messages indicating the fault are displayed on the instrument cluster screen when the ignition is switched on.

Fault messages can also be displayed in the Infotainment system.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the message is first shown, only the ⚠ (serious hazard) or ⚠ (warning) remain displayed.

Overview

You can display the vehicle status on the infotainment system by pressing ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > *Service*.



Ⓐ Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number

Ⓑ Service intervals

Ⓒ Tyre pressure check

Ⓓ High-voltage battery state of health

Ⓔ Total distance travelled

Getting to know the Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview

Overview



Ⓐ Touchscreen

Ⓑ Touch bar for volume control

⏻ Depending on the status:

- **The Infotainment system off**
  - **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on
- **The Infotainment system on**
  - **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off
  - **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

- The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

HOME menu

Use

The HOME menu provides quick access to tiles with favourite functions.

You can set and rearrange tiles.

1. To display, press ⌂ on the Infotainment system display.

Settings

Displaying the next page

1. Swipe your finger on the display to the right or left.

Adding the HOME menu page

1. Hold your finger on one of the tiles.
2. Select the page.
3. Tap +.
4. Add tiles as needed.
5. Press *Done* in the top bar.

The HOME menu may have a maximum of three pages.

Deleting the HOME menu page

1. Hold your finger on one of the tiles.
2. Press *Delete page* > *Delete page*.

Edit a tile of a favourite feature

1. Hold your finger anywhere in the HOME menu.
2. Select the page to edit.
3. Press ✎ on the tile you want to change.
4. To remove the content of a tile, press 🗑.

   Or:

   To change the size of a tile, press < or >.
   - < and > is only displayed if the tile is empty or if a function is stored in it, which can be in both a large and a small tile.
   - The resizing of the tile is only displayed if there is enough space for the large tile.
5. Select the desired function from the list.
6. Press *Done* on the tile to finish editing the tile.
7. Press *Done* in the top bar to finish editing the page.

Favourite applications

Operation

The favourites bar is located in the side bar closer to the driver. In addition to the mandatory Phone app, you can store up to three other favourite apps here.

Adding a preferred application

1. Hold your finger on any favourite app.
2. Drag the desired application from the list to the desired position.

   By dragging to an already occupied position, the desired application replaces the original application.
3. Tap *Finish*.

ⓘ The Phone app cannot be replaced.

Removing a preferred application

1. Hold your finger on any favourite app.
2. Press ⊗ next to the application you want to remove.

   Or:

   Drag the application you want to remove from the bar to the list of applications.
3. Tap *Finish*.

ⓘ The Phone application cannot be removed, only moved to another position.

Applications menu

Use

The **Applications** menu contains apps available in the infotainment functions.

Settings

Displaying the Applications menu

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘.

Changing the position of the application

1. Hold your finger on the desired application.
2. Move the application to the desired position.

ⓘ Moving an application to another application creates a folder.

Logout screen

Use

The logout screen appears before you leave the vehicle, allowing you to activate selected functions.

Settings

Displaying the selected feature items on the logout screen

1. On the logout screen, press ✎.
2. Add or remove the desired items.

   Hold and drag the added item up or down to change its order.
3. Press *OK*.

Configuration assistant

Functionality

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on and after the Infotainment system is switched on, it is necessary to carry out configuration.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Settings

Setting basic functions

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > ⚙.

The following settings can be made, for example:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Other settings

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙.

In the displayed menus, you can manage, for example:

- App access to microphone, car location and your data
- Displaying app notifications
- External application accounts
- Default app for infotainment functions
- Using the infotainment storage

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap > > > .
3. Press *Restore factory settings* and follow the instructions in the infotainment display.

After restoring the factory settings, Škoda Connect will no longer be active. To activate them, you must restart the Infotainment system and reactivate the services.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system is not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

If Škoda Connect services are available, you can use the System Update function » *page 124* to check for an update and update your system.

When Škoda Connect services are unavailable, you will be contacted by a Škoda Service Partner in case an update becomes available.

Sound

Settings

1. Tap > > > .

For example, the following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment system functions volume
- Automatic volume adjustment

  This function monitors the volume of the media and dampens sudden fluctuations in the volume in the following cases, for example:

  - When changing station FM/DAB
  - When changing the media source
  - When switching between tracks

The volume can be controlled by swiping with one finger on the touchpad below the infotainment display or using the left rotary control on the steering wheel.

The Infotainment system controls

Screen controls

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

- The Infotainment screen **is operated by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Overview



Ⓐ Displaying the HOME menu or the Applications menu

Ⓑ Preferred functions

Ⓒ Air conditioning control

Ⓓ Status bar

Press: displays the Notification centre

Ⓔ Information bar

- – Active call on additional telephone

  Press: displays an active call
- – the microphone is actively used by a function or an application

  Press: displays information on microphone use and microphone access settings
- – immediate climate control function active » *page 83*

  Press: activating/deactivating immediate climate control

Operation

Touch operation is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

Settings

Set the brightness level of all displays in the > > > menu.

Keypad

Overview

The layout of the keypad characters depends on the currently set keypad language and the set Infotainment language.

Keypad types:

- Alphanumeric
- Numeric
- Input keypad
- Search keypad

Operation

The keypad is displayed automatically when the Infotainment system prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

You can enter search terms including diacritical characters.

Additional keypad languages

The keypad is always available in the infotainment language.

You can also set other keypad languages and switch between them when entering.

Selecting the keypad language

1. Press on the keyboard repeatedly.

   Or:

   Keep the button pressed down.

Further character variants

1. Hold the symbol to display other variants of the symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Settings

Additional keypad languages can be set in the following way:

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > item to select language > item to select keyboard.
2. Mark the desired languages.

Control centre

Use

The Infotainment control centre allows quick access to your favourite functions and some settings.

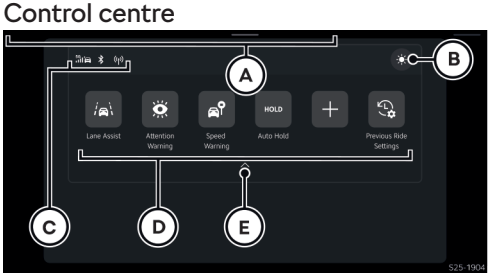
Overview

Displaying the control centre



1. Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

Control centre



Ⓐ Control Centre display area
Ⓑ Display and switch illumination settings
Ⓒ Connection status information
Ⓓ Preferred functions
Ⓔ Closing the control centre

Notification centre

Use

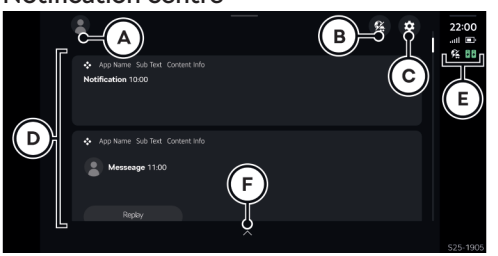
The Notifications centre provides quick access to notifications and some infotainment settings.

Overview

Displaying the Notification centre

1. Press the status bar at the top of the side bar farther from the driver.

Notification centre



Ⓐ User profile settings
Ⓑ Setting maximum privacy mode
Ⓒ Configuration of the system
Ⓓ Notification list
Ⓔ Status bar
Press: displays the Notification centre
Ⓕ Closing the Notification centre

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Voice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently.

The dialogue is controlled by artificial intelligence. This is indicated by the ✦ symbol.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows you to recognize speech and control other functions, such as finding special destinations or weather information.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

For answering more complex questions, online voice control can use the artificial intelligence features based on ChatGPT from OpenAI (**https://openai.com**). In this case, the system will indicate this fact in the response. Voice commands are always the responsibility of the user, who must ensure that this does not violate legislation or the rights of third parties. The ChatGPT may be incorrect, inaccurate, incomplete or offensive and the user should always verify the veracity of the output and the appropriateness of its use.

Operating conditions

Voice control function conditions

- Ignition on
- The Infotainment system on
- The digital assistant application > > > is selected in the Laura menu.

Voice control function conditions

In order to use the voice control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
- The Škoda Connect Premium licence is active.
- The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
- The *Škoda Connect services* option is activated in the privacy settings.

Operation

Switching voice control on

1. Press on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

1. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** or **"OK Škoda"**.

The symbol will appear after activation.

Entering a voice command

1. With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

If the *Long Listening* function is not active, voice control is switched off after the voice command is executed.

Rephrasing a voice command

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot". If this procedure is unsuccessful, try using different words in the wording of the command.

Accelerating the voice control

1. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** or **"OK Škoda"** together with the voice command.

Or:

1. If *Interrupt voice output* is enabled, enter the voice assistant's response with a new voice command.

Terminating the voice control

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

Or:

1. Say the voice command **"Cancel"** while entering the voice command.

Restrictions

For some markets and infotainment languages, voice control is not available. This situation will manifest itself as follows:

- The Laura application is not displayed in the Application menu, in the favourites bar.
- When the button on the steering wheel is pressed, the corresponding warning appears on the infotainment system.

The directional microphone only reacts to the voice commands of the user who has activated the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

At speeds over 80 km/h, Infotainment may not always recognise the activation command.

Voice control is unavailable while a phone call is in progress or when any of the parking assist systems is activated.

Settings

Voice control is set up in the Laura application.

Displaying the Laura application

1. Tap > > .

Voice assistant settings

1. Select the *General* tab.

The following functions can be set up in the menu displayed:

- Activating the voice assistant by voice
- Listening to the voice assistant for longer
- Ability to interrupt the voice output of the voice assistant
- Displaying a recorded speech
- Default application for media and radio commands
- Continuous listening to the voice assistant
    - This function is displayed for some languages only.
    - The voice assistant listens continuously when this function is active. It is not necessary to use the activation command or press button on the steering wheel to activate.
    - The function is active when the driver is alone in the vehicle.

You can change the volume of the voice assistant when the voice assistant is speaking. The volume can be controlled by swiping with one finger on the touchpad below the infotainment display or using the left rotary control on the steering wheel.

Proactive suggestions

Laura notices recurring patterns of behavior and offers relevant suggestions based on them.

For example, it can suggest appropriate contacts for phone calls based on time, location and previous calls, or relevant applications when searching.

Settings

1. Press the *Proactivity* tab.

   In the menu displayed, you can turn on or off contact and application suggestions.

   For detailed information about the option, press .

Self-help

Displaying the control help menus

The help section contains more detailed information on how and what options are available for communicating with the voice assistant.

1. In Laura app, select the *Help* tab.

Or:

1. If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say ***"help"***.

Radio

Radio

Overview

Displaying the Radio application

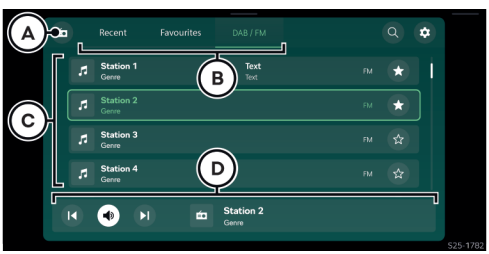
1. Tap > > .

Displaying stations menu

If the player is displayed in the Radio application, press .

View the list of available stations

1. Press the *FM/DAB* tab.



Ⓐ Selecting a source
If you select a source other than Radio, the Media application is displayed.

Ⓑ Station Menu Tabs

Ⓒ List of available stations

Ⓓ Mini-player

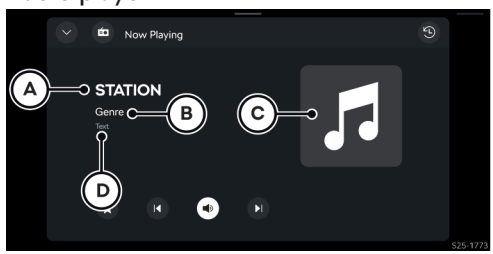
★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets
Press: removes a station from favourites

☆ Station not saved in favourites list
Press: adds a station to favourites

Display the player

1. Press the name of the station being played in the mini-player.

Radio player



Ⓐ Station name

Ⓑ Station genre

Ⓒ Station logo

Ⓓ Broadcast content information

Switch to previous available station

Switch to next available station

★ Removing a station from favourites

☆ Adding a station to favourites

Switch sound off

Switch sound on

Displaying the station list

Selecting a source
If you select a source other than Radio, the Media application is opened.

Display the history of the radio text of the currently listened station

Operation

Recent stations

The list of recent stations contains the last 12 stations that have been listened to for at least 10 seconds.

Displaying the list of recent stations

1. If the player is displayed in the Radio application, press .
2. Press the *Recent* tab.

Management of the list of recent stations

1. In the list of recent stations, hold your finger on the desired station.
2. A menu with the following functions is displayed:
   - ☆ – adding a station to favourites
   - ★ – removing a station from favourites
   - 🗑 – removing a station from the list of recent stations
   - 🗑 – removing all stations from the list of recent stations

Favourite stations

Displaying the list of favourite stations

1. If the player is displayed in the Radio application, press ⌄.
2. Press the *Favourites* tab.

Management of favourites list

1. In the list of favourite stations, hold your finger on the desired station until the context menu appears.
2. Hold your finger and move the station to the desired position.

   Or:

   Release your finger and access the context menu function:

   - 🗑 – removing a station from the list of favorite stations
   - 🗑 – removing all stations from the list of favorite stations

Adding a station to the list of favorite stations

1. To save the currently listened station, press ☆ in the radio player.

   Or:

   Press ☆ for the desired station in the following lists:

   - List of available stations
   - List of recent stations
   - List of station search results

ⓘ The favourites list can contain a maximum of 30 stations.

Finding stations manually

1. If the player is displayed in the Radio application, press ⌄.
2. Tap 🔍.
3. Enter part of the station name to search for.

   Or:

   Enter the frequency to search for.

ⓘ Enter one decimal place when searching for a frequency. You can use a decimal comma as well as a decimal point.

Restrictions

- The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- There are antennas in the vehicle's rear window for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

Settings

Receiving station traffic news (TP)

When the function is switched on, traffic reports will be received.

Switching the function on/off

1. Press ⚙ > *Traffic announcement*.

Reception of additional DAB station announcements

The function is available for some countries only.

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather, sports reports, financial news, etc.

Switching the function on/off

1. Press ⚙ > *DAB announcements*.

Advanced setting

Automatic switch to a similar DAB station

The function is available for some countries only.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically retune to a similar DAB station in case the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost.

1. Press ⚙ > *Automatic switching of DAB stations to similar ones*.

Automatic switching to online broadcasting

The function is available for some countries only.

The infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to its online broadcast in case the signal of the station being listened to is lost.

Stations supporting switching to online broadcasting have FM or DAB type displayed in the lists.

1. Press ⚙ > *Online transmitter monitoring* to turn the function on/off.
2. Set the quality of the data transfer in *Prefer. the data rate of the online radio*.

Whether the radio signal is received or the online data can be found in the audio player:

- FM or DAB station type highlighted in white – the radio signal of the station is received.
- WEB station type highlighted in white – the online broadcast of the station is received.

ⓘ This function requires active Škoda Connect services and a data tariff or an infotainment connection to a Wi-Fi hotspot with internet access.

Display of the station logo or images transmitted by the station

The function is available for some countries only.

In the radio player, instead of the station logo, images transmitted by DAB station may be displayed.

Choosing the display between the station logo and the images transmitted by the station

1. Tap ⚙.
2. Under Preferred view, select one of the following options:
   - *Slideshow* – displaying images transmitted by the station
   - *Station logos* – station logo display

Media

Audio player

Overview

Displaying the Media application

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > 🖭 > 🖭.
2. Select the desired media source.

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘.
2. In the application menu, press the tile of the desired direct media source.

Direct media sources include, for example:

- USB disk
- Phone connected via Bluetooth

Pressing the direct media source in the application menu opens the Media application.

Pressing the indirect media source in the application menu opens the application of the media source.

You can still select an indirect media source as a media source in the Media app.

Indirect media sources include, for example:

- Android Auto and Apple CarPlay
- Most third-party applications

Selecting media sources

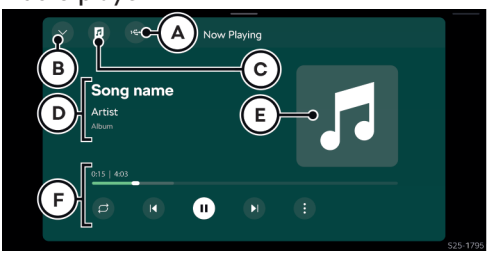
1. Press the symbol of the current media source in the top bar and select the desired media source.

   If you select Radio as the source, the Radio application is opened.

Display the player

1. Press the name of the title being played in the mini-player.

Audio player



Ⓐ Current media source
Press: selects a media source

Ⓑ Displaying the media list of the current source

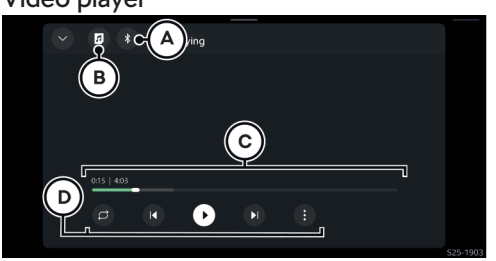
Ⓒ Displaying the current playlist

Ⓓ Details about the title being played

Ⓔ The album image

Ⓕ Player timeline and controls
The available player controls may vary depending on the current media source.

Video player



Ⓐ Selecting media sources

Ⓑ Displaying the current playlist

Ⓒ Timeline

Ⓓ Player controls
The available player controls may vary depending on the current media source.

Operation

Operation – basics

- Starting playback
- Pausing
- Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track
- Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning
- Tapping: playing the next track
- Displaying advanced controls
- Switches over to video player
- Switches over to audio player

Advanced operation

- Fast forwarding within the track
- Fast rewinding within the track
- Rewind 15 seconds back within the track
- Fast forward 15 seconds within the track
- Random playback of titles in the current playlist
- Switching off random playback
- Repeating playback of the current playlist
- Repeating playback of the current track
- Playback without repeating
- Selecting audio tracks and subtitles

ⓘ You can also move within the track by swiping your finger over the timeline.

Restrictions

The availability of some media control functions depends on the selected source and the software used.

Settings

Video player image format

The video player offers several options for displaying the video being played.

1. Press ⚙ > *Image format* in the media list.
2. Under *Image format*, select one of the following options:
   - Auto – automatic selection of display format
   - 4:3 – displaying the entire image with a 4:3 aspect ratio regardless of the original aspect ratio
   - 16:9 – displaying the entire image with a 16:9 aspect ratio regardless of the original aspect ratio
   - Zoom – stretching the image with the original aspect ratio to fill the entire infotainment display. Parts of the image outside the frame will not be displayed.
   - Original – displaying the image with the original aspect ratio to fit the entire infotainment display.

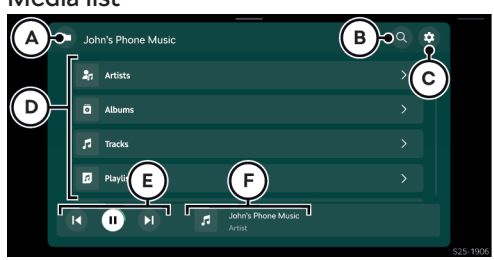
File management

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.
- Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
- Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

Overview

Media list



- (A) Selecting a source
- (B) Search for media
- (C) Settings
- (D) List of media categories of the current source
- (E) Mini player controls
- (F) Title and artist of the current track

Restrictions

The availability of some media control functions depends on the connected source and the software used.

Technical data and specifications

USB

The following information applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x, or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Mobile devices management

Using mobile devices

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, observe the following guidelines:

- Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
- Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

  We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.

- If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
- Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

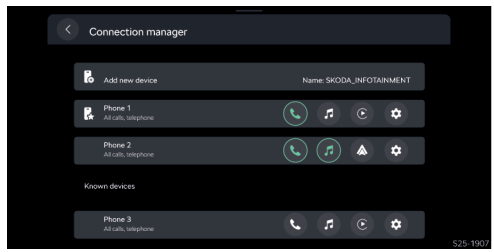
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

1. Press > > > > *Device Manager*.



The device allows the use of telephone functions

The device enables the use of infotainment as a media player

The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto

The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

Display of additional options, for example:

- Set as preferred phone

  The phone will always be connected as the main phone.
- Call-back number

  During an emergency call, this number is sent to dispatchers as a contact phone number.
- Disconnecting a phone
- Unpairing a phone

ⓘ You can also unpair by swiping from the right edge of the phone to the left.

ⓘ If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Restrictions

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device be-

ing tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. In the infotainment, > > > press to confirm that the *Bluetooth* is on.
2. Find available Bluetooth devices in the mobile device.
3. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
   - To view or change the name of the unit, press in the infotainment > > > > *Bluetooth* > *Vehicle name*.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager* > *Add new device*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the desired connection type.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of known devices.
3. Select the desired connection type.
4. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Phone

Using the phone

Overview

Displaying the Phone application

1. Tap > > .

If the phone functions are not available, check whether the mobile device is connected.

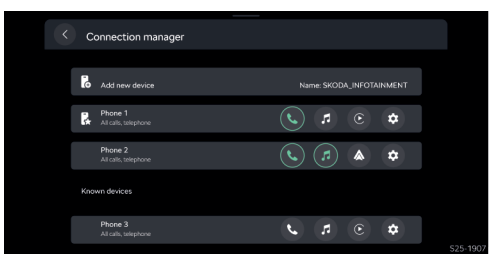
Displaying contacts

1. Press *Contacts*.
2. If you have two phones connected, press and select the required phone.

If the phone contacts are not displayed, check the contact import confirmation request on the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

1. Press > *Device Manager*.



The telephone allows the use of telephone functions

Telephone enables use of infotainment as a media player

The telephone enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto

The telephone enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

Display of additional options, for example:

- Set as preferred phone

  The phone will always be connected as the main phone.
- Call-back number

  During an emergency call, this number is sent to dispatchers as a contact phone number.
- Disconnecting a phone
- Unpairing a phone

You can also unpair by swiping from the right edge of the phone to the left.

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Operating conditions

- The Bluetooth infotainment function and telephone function are turned on.
  - To activate the Bluetooth infotainment function, press > > > > *Bluetooth*.
- The telephone is in range of the Bluetooth infotainment unit signal.
- The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, the driver cannot pair new devices while driving. Pairing while driving can only be carried out by a passenger.

Settings

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

- The main phone – if no phone is connected.
- Additional phone – if one phone is connected
- Select which phone to replace – if two phones are connected.

Switching between main and additional telephone

1. Tap .
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone – Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth in the Infotainment system.
   - To view or change the name of the unit, press in the infotainment > > > > *Bluetooth* > *Vehicle name*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth is visible on the phone.
2. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager* > *Add new device*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available phone.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
5. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select which phone to replace.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection is established automatically when the ignition is switched on. You can manually connect your phone as follows:

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager*.
2. Select the desired phone from the list of available phone.
3. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select which phone to replace.

Contacts

Settings

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment system memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 10,000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to 5 phone numbers and 2 addresses.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Sorting contacts in the phone book

1. Tap .
2. Under *Sort order*, select sort by first or last name.

Advanced setting

Updating phone contacts

When the phone reconnects with the Infotainment system, the list is automatically updated.

1. For manual update, press > *Download contacts*.

Phone conversation

Overview

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Holding a call
- Returning to a call on hold
- Merging several calls into a conference call
- Switching the call sound to another speaker
- End a call
- Displays a keyboard for entering a number/tone selection

ⓘ You can also answer the incoming call using the right rotary button on the multifunction steering wheel » page 58

Operation

Entering phone number

1. Press the *Call* tab.

   If the *Call* tab is not visible, swipe the tabs to the left.
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.
3. To dial, tap .

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the function is switched on, you can reject the incoming call and send one of the preset SMS messages to the caller at the same time.

1. Press > *SMS* > *Reject a call by sending an SMS message*.

Conference call

Overview

A conference call is a joint phone conversation of 3-6 participants.

1. Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

   Or:

   During a call/conference in progress, accept a new incoming call.
2. To merge calls and start a joint conference call, press .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Holding a call
- Returning to a call on hold
- Switching the call sound to another speaker
- End a call
- Displays a keyboard for entering a number/tone selection
- Displaying the conference call participants

Settings

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the function is switched on, you can reject the incoming call and send one of the preset SMS messages to the caller at the same time.

1. Press > *SMS* > *Reject a call by sending an SMS message*.

SMS

Operation

Sending a text message

1. If you have two phones connected, press and select the phone from which you want to send a SMS message.
2. From the list of available or favourite contacts, navigate to the desired contact.

   Or:

   Press and search for the desired contact.
3. If the contact contains only one phone number, press .

   Or:

   If the contact contains multiple numbers, press the contact entry.
4. Press next to the number you want to send to SMS.
5. Select the desired SMS.

Displaying received text messages

Infotainment only allows SMS messages received during a telephone connection to be displayed.

1. On the sidebar of the display farther from the driver, press the status bar.

   Notifications show SMS messages received while connected to the phone.

 By deleting the notification with the infotainment SMS message, they will lose the ability to view this SMS message. The SMS message remains on the phone.

Reading messages with the voice assistant

1. In the notification with the message, press *Read*.

 If you receive multiple SMS messages from one contact, they will all be displayed in one notification. When you press *Read*, the voice assistant only reads the last message. The notification is deleted after reading the message.

Restrictions

Infotainment does not allow views SMS stored on the phone. It only allows messages received during a telephone connection to be displayed.

The infotainment does not allow writing SMS. It only allows you to send preset message templates.

In the case of telephones with SMS operating system, the function iOS requires that the user in the phone in the settings of Bluetooth for the infotainment unit turns on the function Show message notifications.

Settings

Switching on/off graphical notification when receiving a new message

If the function is switched on, incoming messages are displayed as notifications.

1. Press > *SMS* > *Show incoming SMS*.

Turning call rejection with a message on/off

If the function is switched on, you can reject the incoming call and send one of the preset SMS messages to the caller at the same time.

1. Press > *SMS* > *Reject a call by sending an SMS message*.

Voicemail

Operation

Voicemail

1. On the *Call* tab, press and hold ⏀.

The voice mail number stored in the phone is dialled.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi use

Use

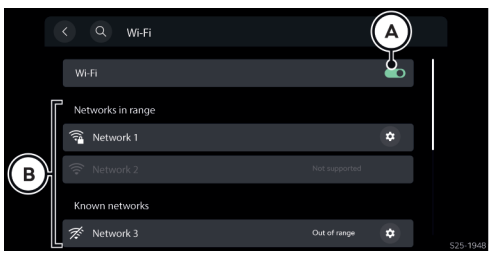
Wi-Fi enables connection to the Internet or SmartLink connections.

ⓘ You can connect up to 8 mobile devices to the Infotainment system hotspot, and at the same time the Infotainment system can be connected to another hotspot.

Overview

List of available hotspots

1. To view, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Wi-Fi*.



Ⓐ Switching the Wi-Fi function on/off

Ⓑ Hotspot list by category

Unsupported Wi-Fi network

Known network out of range

Available supported network

Known network with incorrect saved login details

⚙ Display of additional options, for example:

- Connecting to a Wi-Fi network manually
- Removing network login details

  This option removes a Wi-Fi network with known networks.

ⓘ You can update the list of available hotspots by sliding your finger down from the top of the list.

Restrictions

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with secure access and WPA2/WPA3 encryption.

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. To switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot of the infotainment system, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 and set the switch to On under *Vehicle hotspot*.
2. Switch on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment Wi-Fi from the list of available Wi-Fi hotspots.
   - To display or change the name of the infotainment Wi-Fi, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Vehicle name*.
4. Select the Infotainment system hotspot and enter the password.
   - To view or change the password, in infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Vehicle hotspot password*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device Wi-Fi hotspot

The function may not be available in all countries.

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Wi-Fi*.
2. Turn on *Wi-Fi*.
3. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available networks within range.

4. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

ⓘ The infotainment system remembers the login data for previously connected hotspots.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have 12-63 characters. It must contain at least one lower case letter, an upper case letter, and a number.

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Vehicle hotspot password*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Activating/deactivating data transfer with connected device

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Share Internet connection (tethering)*.

Advanced setting

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Vehicle name*.
2. Enter and confirm the network name.

Fast connection using a QR code

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Vehicle hotspot* > *Vehicle name* > *Connect device to vehicle hotspot*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Self-help

Tips for a seamless connection

- Leave only the hotspot being connected switched on and turn off the other hotspots.
- Delete unused hotspots. This will reduce the time required to establish a connection.
- Some hotspots take longer to connect, so wait until the connection is complete.
- If you break the connection, search for available hotspots again and repeat the connecting process.

SmartLink

Using the SmartLink function

Functionality

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Certification may depend on the use of the most up-to-date SmartLink application.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay

The infotainment system does not support a USB cable connection Apple CarPlay.

When the device is connected in Android Auto or Apple CarPlay mode, the Phone application button in the favorite functions bar changes to or , depending on the type of connection.

Operating conditions

- The mobile device supports SmartLink connection type Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.
- Mobile devices and SmartLink connection type are supported in your country.
- Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restrictions on SmartLink applications during the drive

For safety reasons, some SmartLink applications cannot be operated while driving or their use is limited.

Android Auto

Overview

Displaying the Android Auto application

In order to view Android Auto application, the following condition must be met:

- There is a phone supporting Android Auto connection with the infotainment.

Or:

- There is a known device supporting Android Auto connection within a range.

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

1. Press in the favourites bar.

Operating conditions

- The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- The mobile device and Android Auto connectivity are supported in the relevant country.
- The Android Auto application is installed on the mobile device.
- Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.
- Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Navigation function restriction

If you are navigating using the Infotainment system, starting navigation in Android Auto application will stop the Infotainment system navigation.

If you are navigating using Android Auto app, starting navigation in the Infotainment system will stop navigation in this application.

Settings

Connection via USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB port with a cable.
4. Press *OK* if you want to open Android Auto application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Android Auto application later.

Connection of unpaired mobile device via Bluetooth/Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth and Bluetooth visibility on the mobile device.
2. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager* > *Add new device*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
5. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
6. Press *OK* if you want to open Android Auto application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Android Auto application later.

Connection of a paired mobile device via Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility on the mobile device.
2. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager*.
3. From the list of known devices, select the device with the symbol.
4. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
5. Press *OK* if you want to open Android Auto application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Android Auto application later.

Connection via Bluetooth®/Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® are activated in the Infotainment system.
- The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
5. Press *OK* if you want to open Android Auto application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Android Auto application later.

Closing Android Auto application

1. In Android Auto application, go to the application list and press Škoda icon.

Terminating the connection

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager*.
2. On the phone item with an active connection Android Auto, press .

Apple CarPlay

Overview

Displaying the Apple CarPlay application

In order to view Apple CarPlay application, the following condition must be met:

- There is a phone supporting Apple CarPlay connection connected by Bluetooth with the infotainment.

Or:

- There is a known device supporting Apple CarPlay connection within a range.

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > ▶ on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

1. Press ▶ in the favourites bar.

Operating conditions

- The device to be connected supports Apple CarPlay connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connectivity can be found on the Apple Inc website.
- The mobile device and Apple CarPlay connectivity are supported in the relevant country.
- Siri voice control is activated.
- The data connection on the mobile device is switched on.
- Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.
- Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Restrictions

The infotainment system does not support a USB cable connection Apple CarPlay.

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

Connection of unpaired mobile device via Bluetooth/Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility on the mobile device.
2. In the infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Device Manager* > *Add new device*.
3. In the displayed list, look for the desired device with the symbol and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the phone and infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connection of a paired mobile device via Bluetooth/Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility on the mobile device.
2. In the infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > 📱 > *Device Manager* > *Add new device*.
3. In the displayed list, look for the desired device with the symbol and select it.
4. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
5. Press *OK* if you want to open Apple CarPlay application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Apple CarPlay application later.

Connection via Bluetooth/Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- The minimum iOS version is 9.
- No other mobile device is connected via SmartLink.

- The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth are activated in the Infotainment system.

1. Enable Bluetooth on the mobile device.
2. Find available Bluetooth devices on the phone.
3. Select the Bluetooth in the Infotainment system.
4. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
5. Follow the instructions on the phone and infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
6. If two other devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. Press *OK* if you want to open Apple CarPlay application now.

   Or:

   Press *Cancel* if you want to open Apple CarPlay application later.

Closing Apple CarPlay application

1. In Apple CarPlay application, go to the application list and press Škoda icon.

Terminating the connection

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Device Manager*.
2. On the phone item with an active connection Apple CarPlay, press .

Navigation

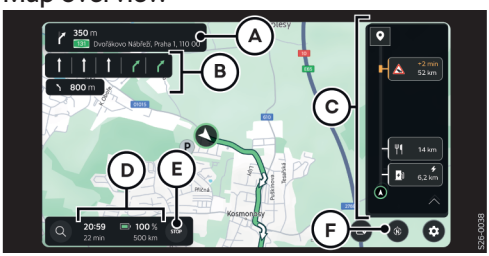
Map

Overview

Displaying the Navigation application

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > ➤.

Map overview



Ⓐ The following navigation instruction
Tapping: repeating the last voice navigation instruction

Ⓑ Lane guidance and other navigation instruction

Ⓒ Route events and destination suggestions

Ⓓ Trip information
Pressing: Displaying the entire route

Ⓔ Exit navigation

Ⓕ Changing map orientation
- 2D north-facing map
- 2D map oriented by direction of travel
- 3D map oriented by direction of travel

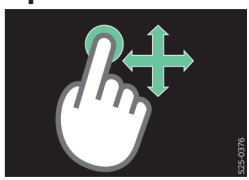
🔍 Search

Route overview

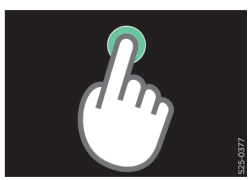
⚙ Map and navigation settings

Map centred on vehicle position

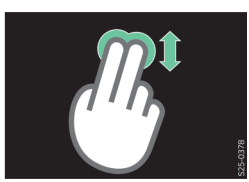
Operation



Scrolling the map



Setting a destination by holding a point on the map



Changing the 2D/3D map view



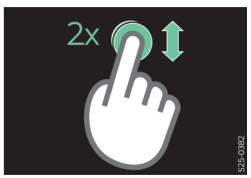
Rotating the map



Zooming in on the map – option 1 / option 2



Zooming out on the map – option 1 / option 2



Smooth zooming in/out on the map

1. Tap the display twice and hold your finger on the display on the second tap.
2. Slide your finger up to zoom in on the map.

   Slide your finger down to zoom out on the map.

Settings

Setting the information displayed on the map

1. Press ⚙ > *Map Contents*.
2. Select the information to be displayed on the map, for example:
   - POIs
   - 3D buildings
   - Favourite destinations
   - Traffic fluency
   - Alternative routes
   - Range

Choice of map colour scheme

1. Tap ⚙.
2. Under *Map colors*, select your preferred theme:
   - *Automatic* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
   - *Day* – map in day mode
   - *Night* – map in night mode

Displaying of satellite map materials

1. Press ⚙ > *Satellite map*.

Displaying of navigation instructions

1. Press ⚙ > *Display navigation instructions*.

Selecting a destination to display trip information

Trip information may be displayed for the final destination of the trip or for the nearest inserted destination.

1. Tap ⚙.
2. Under *Trip information for:*, select the type of destination.

Setting the displayed charging stations filter

When the filter is on, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be displayed on the map and in the search results.

1. Press ⚙ > *Charge settings* > *Filter* > *Map and search filters*.
2. Set the desired parameters.

ⓘ If the filter is enabled, the set parameters will be also used when searching for charging stations.

Self-help

Automatic updating the navigation database

The navigation database may be automatically updated if Infotainment Online » *page 127* service is purchased.

Turning on/off the automatic update

1. Press ⚙ > *Database and disclaimer* > *Automatic update*.

Manual updating the navigation database

For information on available updates, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following Škoda website.

https://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

ⓘ You can also report incorrect or inaccurate data in the navigation database on this website.

Finding the version of the navigation database

1. Press ⚙ > *Database and disclaimer*.

   The version of the database is listed in the *Database*.

Finding a destination

Overview

Finding a destination

1. Tap Q.



Ⓐ Input line

Ⓑ Main categories of specific destinations

- **Tap:** search by the category selected

Ⓒ Last destinations

- ⓘ – displaying the details of the destination

⋮ Displaying additional POI categories

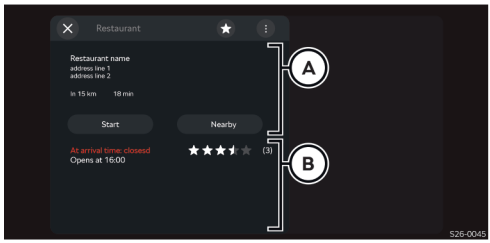
Enabling/disabling online search mode Google

Destination details

The window with details include available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

- After pressing ⓘ in the list of suggested destinations or in the search results
- After you tap the destination in the route overview
- After you tap a point or a POI symbol on the map



Ⓐ Basic information about the destination

Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:

- *Charge* – setting the destination as a charging stop
- *Nearby* – search for POIs near the destination
- *Entered Destination* – adds a destination as an intermediate destination for the current route
- *Delete* – removes a destination from the current route

Ⓑ Advanced information by destination type

⋮ Display additional options by destination type

Operation

Selecting the search method

The navigation allows you to search from two sources:

- Native navigation search
- Search online Google

1. Tap Q > .

Selecting a search target

1. Tap Q.
2. Enter the name or address of the destination.
3. Press to see information about the destination ⓘ.

   Or:

   Press the destination to start navigating to the destination.

ⓘ It is only possible to search by coordinates when using an online search Google.

Selecting a destination by tapping a point or POI on the map

1. Tap the desired point or a POI symbol on the map.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Finding a parking lot

1. Tap Q > P.
2. For a more detailed search, press *Search Filter* and select the desired criteria.

If online data is available, extended information such as parking space availability can be displayed for some parking spaces.



Ⓐ Parking lots with parking space display

Ⓑ Streets with parking spaces

Ⓒ Found parking space and on-street parking

Ⓓ Parking lot without availability information

Ⓔ Legend for parking space
The number of available parking spaces in the car park or on the street is indicated by the following colours:

- — Most seats are vacant
- — Approximately half of the seats are vacant
- — Most seats are occupied
- — Information on available parking spaces on the street is not available

Finding a charging station

1. Tap Search > Charging.
2. For a more detailed search, press *Search Filter* and select the desired criteria.

If online data is available, extended information such as charging station occupancy can be displayed for some charging stations.

The occupancy of the charging stations is indicated by the following colours:

- — Most seats are vacant
- — Approximately half of the seats are vacant
- — Most seats are occupied

Predictive destinations

Overview

Suggested destinations

When the ignition is switched on, a pop-up window appears automatically on the infotainment display, suggesting a destination depending on the current location and time of day.

Settings

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

1. Press Settings > *Adapt user behaviour* > *Adapt user behaviour*.

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

1. To delete information in the last 24 hours, press Settings > *Adapt user behaviour* > *Delete last 24 hours*.

   Or:

   To delete adapted routes and destinations of the current user, press Settings > *Adapt user behaviour* > *Delete personal routes and destinations*.

Last destinations

Overview

List of last destinations

1. Tap Search.



Ⓐ Home address

Ⓑ Business address

Ⓒ Last destinations

Press to see information about the destination.

Operation

Deleting the last destination

1. Tap the last destination button and drag with your finger to the left.

   Or:

   Press and hold a favourite destination and press Delete.

Settings

Setting the home address

1. Tap Q.
2. Press and hold the *Home address* destination and press ✎.
3. Search for an address or press one of the destinations.
4. Press *Save*.

Setting the business address

1. Tap Q.
2. Press and hold the *Business address* destination and press ✎.
3. Search for an address or press one of the destinations.
4. Press *Save*.

Favourite destinations

Overview

List of favourite destinations

1. Tap Q › ★.

Operation

Deleting a favourite destination

1. Press and hold a favourite destination and press ★ › ✕.

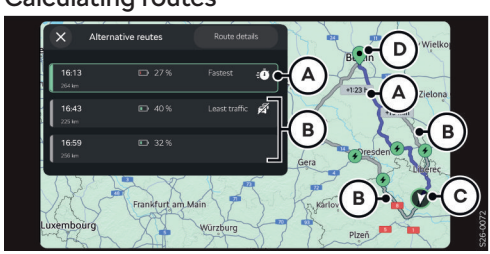
   Or:

   Press a favourite destination and swipe left.

Route guidance

Overview

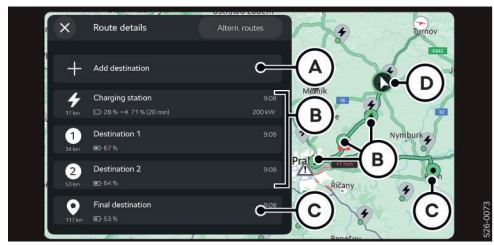
Calculating routes



Ⓐ Currently selected route
Ⓑ Alternative routes
Ⓒ Current vehicle position
Ⓓ Destination location

Route plan

Press the trip information in the map view.



Ⓐ Adding a destination
Ⓑ Inserted destinations of the route
Ⓒ Final destination of the route
Ⓓ Current vehicle position

Changing the route destinations

In the route plan, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the line is unlocked.
2. Drag the line to the desired position

   The route will be recalculated.

Traffic density

If the traffic flow display is on and the Škoda Connect online services are active, the map and the route overview can display traffic density information.

Traffic density display:

1. Press ⚙ › *Map Contents*.
2. Select *Continuous traffic*.

- — Low
- — Medium
- — High

ⓘ If the traffic density is not displayed, the density information is not available.

Operation

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Repeating the last voice navigation instruction

1. In the map overview, press the following navigation instruction.

Display of speed limits in the current country

1. Press ⚙ > *Country information*.

Restrictions

If the road conditions or traffic situation do not match the navigation data, the Infotainment system may give incorrect driving recommendations. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

You can update your navigation data » *page 114*.

Settings

Setting navigation instructions

1. Tap ⚙.
2. Under *Navigation announcements*, *Announcements volume* and *Call navigation announcements*, select the desired setting.

Setting the route parameters

1. Press ⚙ > *Route options*.
2. Set the desired items.

Enabling/disabling automatic adding charging stations on the route

If the function is enabled, the Infotainment system will automatically add charging stations on the route if necessary.

1. Press ⚙ > *Charging settings* > *Electric vehicle route planner* > *Electric vehicle route planner*.

Setting up preferred charging stations filter on the map

1. Press ⚙ > *Chargeg settings* > *Filter*.
2. Set the desired charging station parameters.

Enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter on the map

When the filter is enabled, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be highlighted on the map.

1. Press ⚙ > *Charging settings* > > *Filter Search filter*.

Setting the minimum range

1. Press ⚙ > *Charging settings* > *Electric vehicle route planner*.
2. In the *Minimum state of charge at the destination*, set the desired value.

Online services

Škoda Connect

Regulations

Rights and obligations of the parties arising from the provision of these services are regulated in a separate contractual arrangement. Current legal documents relating to Škoda Connect services can be found in MyŠkoda application.

Functionality

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect services are not included in the vehicle equipment. They are ordered separately in the MyŠkoda application.

The range of Škoda Connect services depends on the type and equipment of the vehicle, on the Infotainment system and the country.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, or a link to downloading MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following link or QR code is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

Conditions

Škoda Connect terms of use

- The *Škoda Connect* services option is switched on in the infotainment data protection settings.
- Škoda Connect services are active.
- The logged in user has permission to use the Škoda Connect services.

Availability of Škoda Connect services

Availability is based on the following conditions:

- Mobile networks providing connection to Škoda Connect services are available.
  - Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
  - In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- Škoda Connect services are available for your vehicle, for the Infotainment system and for the country.
  - You can check availability on the following Škoda Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of Škoda Connect services

The signal level of the mobile network providing Škoda Connect services is displayed in the infotainment control center.

The availability of some services depends on the privacy mode setting. The setting is indicated by these symbols on the status bar on the Infotainment system screen:

- – *ŠKODA Connect* services are on and available without localisation services. External applications do not have remote access to functions.
- – *ŠKODA Connect location data* is on. Services Škoda Connect are available with location services.
- – *Remote access* is turned on. The Škoda Connect services are available and the functions can be accessed by external applications such as MyŠkoda.
- – *ŠKODA Connect location data* is enabled and *Remote access* is enabled. The Škoda Connect services are available with location services and external ap-

plications, such as MyŠkoda, can access the functions.

- – *ŠKODA Connect* services are turned off. All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.

Restrictions

Škoda Connect services may be limited or interrupted in the following cases:

- Maintenance, deactivation, software updates, or restrictions with mobile network providers
- Poor reception or no GPS or mobile network signal, e.g. at high speeds, in an underground garage, in a tunnel, or in a mountainous valley
- Limited availability, incomplete or incorrect information from third party providers, e.g. navigation data

MyŠkoda application

Functionality

The MyŠkoda website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, or remote access to the vehicle.

You can download the application to your mobile device by loading the following the QR code or the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda

Conditions

- The user has the Škoda ID account paired with the vehicle.
- Škoda Connect services have been activated in the vehicle.

Data connection

Use

A data connection is required to use some online services and to install and use external applications.

Operation

Ways of creating a data connection

- By connecting the Infotainment system to an external hotspot with internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

- Via a data package for **eSIM** in the car.

Data plan

Selected Škoda Connect services require additional mobile data for their use.

The Škoda Connect Premium license includes an additional data plan provided through a mobile operator.

Activating a data plan:

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Data plans*.
2. Use your mobile phone to scan the QR-code and follow the instructions shown.

The infotainment system connected to an external Wi-Fi hotspot uses the data from the external hotspot.
If the infotainment is not connected to an external Wi-Fi hotspot, it uses data from your data plan.

Restrictions

- In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
- Škoda Auto accepts no liability for changes in the mobile network over time, e.g. generational replacement of outdated technology.

Settings

Turning on/off the data connection to create a hotspot in the car

You can use a prepaid data connection to create a hotspot in the car.

The data connection can be shared by up to 8 connected devices via Wi-Fi.

1. Tap > > > in the Infotainment system.
2. Turn on/off the switch on the *Vehicle hotspot*.

Data package usage overview and purchase options

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Data plans*.

Škoda Connect services user registration and activation

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a Škoda ID user account that you can use in all Škoda applications and services.

You can register as a Škoda Connect user in MyŠkoda application.

1. Follow the instructions in MyŠkoda application to register.

When registering, you will create an S-PIN. The S-PIN is used to authorise requirements within some Škoda Connect services and to log in to your protected user account.

Settings

Activation of Škoda Connect services

The services are activated by the login of the main user.

Selected Škoda Connect services require additional mobile data for their use.

The Škoda Connect Premium license includes an additional data plan provided through a mobile operator.

Activating a data plan

1. In the infotainment, press > > > > *Data plans*.
2. Use your mobile phone to scan the QR-code and follow the instructions shown.

Setting personal data protection

Regulations

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions.

The current privacy statement on protecting personal data can be found on this website:

https://go.skoda.eu/personal-data

As a party to the use of Škoda Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

If the co-rider does not agree with the use of location services, turn off *Škoda Connect location data* setting.

Functionality

When using Škoda Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

If the *Škoda Connect Services* option is deactivated, this affects the data transmission via eSIM. It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via Wi-Fi.

Settings

Setting privacy modes

1. Press > > > *Privacy mode*.

The following items can be switched on or off in the menu:

- *Škoda Connect services* – all services Škoda Connect, except those required by law, which cannot be switched off.
- *Location data for Škoda Connect services* – sharing location services Škoda Connect and sharing vehicle location information.
- *Remote access* – remote access to vehicle functions and data to external applications, such as MyŠkoda application or Škoda remote service diagnostics.

Enabling or disabling items is indicated by the symbol in the status bar. Press the *General Information* tab for more information.

Effect of setting privacy modes

Disabled *Škoda Connect services*:

- All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.
- All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.
- No online updates are available.

ŠKODA Connect services and *ŠKODA Connect location data* enabled:

- All Škoda Connect services are on.

- Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location.
- If *Remote Access* is enabled, vehicle location information is accessible in MyŠkoda application.

ŠKODA Connect services enabled and *ŠKODA Connect location data* disabled:

- All Škoda Connect services, except those using the vehicle's location, are on. Vehicle position information is not shared.
- Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
- All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymous data

If *Škoda Connect location data* is enabled, the vehicle may collect and send anonymized data to improve the services of selected third parties.

These are exclusively undisclosed data without any link to a specific vehicle, its owner or other authorised user.

🛈 To use all Škoda Connect services, it is necessary to turn on *Škoda Connect location data*.

Privacy settings for infotainment applications

1. Tap > > > .

In the menu, it is possible to manage the access of infotainment applications to data and the following functions:

- Microphone
- Camera
- Position

Setting permissions for infotainment applications

1. Tap > > > .

In the menu, it is possible to manage the permissions of individual infotainment applications and default applications for some functions.

Vehicle services settings

1. Press > > > *Services*.

In the menu, specific vehicle services can be switched on or off.

🛈 For a more detailed description and information about the service, press ⓘ on the item of the service.

User management

What you should be mindful of

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user. The previous owner may still be able to control the vehicle's functions and obtain information about users and the vehicle.

It is therefore recommended that you delete the account of the previous main user by resetting it to factory settings. Then log in with your own user account and set yourself as the primary user of the vehicle.

🛈 The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

Users profiles

User management displays a list of logged-in users in the car. In user management, you can do the following:

- Select a user profile
- Add and remove user profiles
- Set the security of the profile

Overview

User management

1. In the infotainment, press > > > *All users*.

Adding a profile:

1. Tap .
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Changing a profile:

1. Select the required profile.
2. If the profile is protected by S-PIN or vehicle PIN code, enter the required PIN.

Deleting a profile:

1. Hold your finger on the profile you want to remove.
2. Press and confirm to remove the profile.

User profile types

Primary user

- The primary user is a user registered in the Infotainment system with activated Škoda Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The vehicle may only have one active primary user.

- All settings are stored in the primary user's personal online account.
- The primary user can make full use of the personalisation and synchronisation function.
- The primary user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.
- The primary user has access to remote vehicle functions.
- The primary user can manage users with an online Škoda ID account in the User Management menu in MyŠkoda.
- The main user profile cannot be changed or deleted. This can only be removed by resetting the infotainment system to the factory settings.

User with Škoda ID

- The user is not the primary user, but they have their own online Škoda ID account.
- The user can make full use of the personalisation function and certain services in MyŠkoda.
- All settings are stored in the logged-in user's personal online account.

Local user

- The local user's profile is not associated with the online account Škoda ID and is not synchronized with Škoda Connect services.
- All changes to the settings associated with this profile remain stored in the vehicle only.
- An Škoda ID account can be added to the local user profile. This changes the local user profile to the user profile with the Škoda ID account.

Guest

- The guest's profile is not synchronized with Škoda Connect services in any way.
- All changes to the settings associated with this profile remain stored in the vehicle only.

Temporary User

- The temporary user's profile is completely anonymous and no settings or personalisations are saved.
- If the temporary user's profile is active when leaving the vehicle and the *Guest* user's profile is automatically selected on the next trip.

Managing the current user

1. In the infotainment, press > > > *My profile*.

The following options can be set up in the menu displayed:

- Setting up linked accounts – allows you to manage the linking of your profile to third party accounts.
- Profile protection settings – set how your profile is protected or unprotect it.
- Using a temporary user – allows you to switch to a completely anonymous user profile in which no settings are saved.
- Adding an Škoda ID account – adding an Škoda ID account changes the local user profile to the user profile with the Škoda ID account.
- Synchronisation of an online account – synchronisation allows storing and transfer of changes to personalised functions on a user account made in another car.
- Personalization – the item is available to the guest profile only. Creates a new profile with personalization from the guest profile.

Operating conditions

To synchronise user accounts with online accounts, the following conditions must be met:

- The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
- Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

User logging in

When the ignition and the Infotainment system are switched on, the initial login screen for the last user account used will be displayed.

1. Confirm the logging in.

   If you are logging into a protected user account, enter the PIN of vehicle or S-PIN and confirm.

Logging in to a protected user account

Some user accounts may be protected. Protected accounts are marked with the symbol in the user list.

In order to log in into a protected user account, the S-PIN that you entered when creating your user account in MyŠkoda application or PIN vehicle is required.

To set account protection, in the infotainment, press > > > *My profile* > *Change pin protection*.

Restoring S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored in MyŠkoda application.

PIN vehicles cannot be restored.

If the profile is protected by PIN of the vehicle, the profile must be removed and added again in the event of PIN loss.

Settings

Deleting a user profile

1. In the infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 👤 > *All users*.
2. Hold your finger on the profile you want to remove.
3. Press 🗑 and confirm to remove the profile.

ⓘ The main user profile cannot be deleted. This can only be removed by resetting the infotainment system to the factory settings.

Deleting the current user account

1. In the infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 👤 > *My profile* > *Remove user from vehicle*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting all users

Restoring the Infotainment system factory settings deletes all user accounts.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. In the infotainment, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the user accounts and delete the primary user account.

Personalisation

Use

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the vehicle personalised functions to an active user profile.

For profiles with Škoda ID user account, after the ignition is switched off, any changes to the function settings are automatically saved to the user account if the vehicle is within range of the contractual mobile network.

By logging in to the user account in another Škoda vehicle, the customisable functions associated with the user account are synchronised depending on the vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system.

System update

Use

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

If Škoda Connect services are available, you can update your system using the System Update function.

The System update function allows you to update the vehicle software online without having to visit a service.

For more information, see the following website:

www ***https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update***

When Škoda Connect services are unavailable, you will be contacted by a Škoda Service Partner in case an update becomes available.

Operation

Update availability

As soon as an update is available, an update availability notification will appear in the infotainment system.

To view the available update, press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > ⚙ > *System update*.

Downloading updates

To download the update, the ignition must be switched on and the vehicle must have Internet access.

1. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > ⚙ > *System update*.
2. To view the details of the update, press *Update Details*.

   To download the installation, press *Download*.
3. After the update has been downloaded successfully, a notification will be displayed to let you know that update is ready to be installed.

Installing the update

1. Park the vehicle safely on a level surface.
2. Press ⌂ > ⁘ > ⚙ > ⚙ > *System update*.
3. Press the update item ready to install.

   For more information about the content of the update, press the *Details* button.
4. To start the installation, press *Next* button and follow the instructions on the infotainment display.
5. Leave the car and lock it.

6. After returning to the car, turn on the ignition and check the result of the update on the Infotainment system screen.

You can also start the ready update installation from the logout screen.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency calls may not be available during installation.

During installation, the vehicle cannot be charged and the ignition cannot be switched on.

Operating conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- Ignition is switched off.
- Škoda Connect services are activated in the vehicle.
- Škoda Connect services are available.
- The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- The 12V vehicle battery and the high-voltage battery have a sufficient level of charge.
- No device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

Troubleshooting

If you experience any of the following conditions after an update, contact a professional garage:

- The Infotainment system display shows a message about an incorrect update installation.
- The Infotainment system display is still switched off after switching on.
- A message about an incomplete update is displayed in the digital instrument cluster.

Connect Store

Use

In Connect Store application of the infotainment, you can do the following:

- Order new features and services
- Renew purchased features and services
- Purchase, install and update apps

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the Škoda Connect Shop website.

https://go.skoda.eu/connect-shop

Overview

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. To view a list of services or applications, select the appropriate tab.

   Or:

   Press and enter part of the name of the service or application you are looking for.

Operating conditions

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- The main vehicle user is logged in.
- Škoda Connect services are active.
- Škoda Connect services are available.
- The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of Škoda Connect services.

Operation

In Connect Store app, you can manage services and Škoda Auto apps, as well as third-party apps.

Services and apps Škoda Connect

1. Press *Škoda Connect* tab in Connect Store app.

   A list of available and active services and applications Škoda Auto will be displayed .

Press a service or app to view its details and other related options.

Downloading services and applications Škoda Auto does not use data from your data package.

External applications

External applications are applications developed by Škoda Auto partners.

Installing an external application:

1. In Connect Store application, press the *Application* tab.
2. On the desired application, press *Install*.
3. Confirm the download of the application via the available data connection.

Removing an external application:

1. In Connect Store application, press the *Application* tab.

   Or:

   In Connect Store application, press the *My Apps* tab.
2. Press the application item you want to remove.
3. Press *Uninstall* to confirm that you want to remove the application.

Displaying of installed external apps.

1. In Connect Store application, press the *My Apps* tab.

   In the displayed menu, there is a list of installed applications and applications for which an update is available.

View previously installed external applications.

1. In Connect Store application, press ⚙ › *Previously installed applications*.

   A list of applications that were previously installed but are not currently installed is displayed.

Application updates

If an application update is available, a notification of the available update is displayed in the notification center.

Starting the update:

1. In the infotainment Notification center, press the notification announcing the available update.

   Or:

   In Connect Store application, press the *My Apps* tab.
2. To update all applications with an available update, press *Update All*.

   Or:

   To update a specific application, press *Updates* on the application item.

Restrictions

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Settings

Using the infotainment memory

1. In the Connect Store application, press ⚙.
2. In *Memory:* item, the current memory usage of the infotainment system is displayed.

   Press to view details on the memory usage of the infotainment system.

Automatic updates

When enabled, the update will automatically start as soon as it is available.

1. In the Connect Store application, press ⚙.
2. Press *Applications from Škoda Auto* to turn on/off the automatic application update Škoda Auto.

   Or:

   Press *Third-party applications* to turn on/off the automatic update of external applications.

Information calls

Use

You can use the information call in case of problems with Škoda Connect services or to obtain information about Škoda products and services.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is within range of the mobile phone network.

Operation



1. Press the ⓘ button.

Tap the ⓘ button to contact the local hotline.

Breakdown call

Use

Breakdown call can be used in case of the vehicle breakdown.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is within range of the mobile phone network.

Operation



1. Press the button.

Tap the button to contact the Škoda assist service. The vehicle also sends information about the status and position of the vehicle.

Škoda Connect services

Overview

iV remote services

Remote iV services enable remote control of e.g. the following functions:

- Online air conditioning control
- Remote charging
- Departure planning
- Plug & Charge

Infotainment Online

The service can be used to extend the navigation in the Infotainment system with, for example, the following functions:

- Online traffic information
- Online map updates
- Charging stations
- Online route import

Remote access

The service provides access to the following vehicle functions and information:

- Unlocking and locking
- Vehicle status
- Last parking position

On-demand functions (FoD)

The service allows you to extend the vehicle's equipment with additional features, which can be purchased through the Škoda Connect Shop.

The functions may be time-limited or permanent.

For on-demand features information, see:

- Connect Store infotainment applications » page 125
- MyŠkoda mobile application » page 120
- Information line » page 126
- Škoda Connect website » page 119

To view the on-demand functions activated in your vehicle, press on the infotainment system in the > > > *FoD*. menu.

Operating conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- The following items are enabled in infotainment privacy settings.
  - *Škoda Connect services*
  - *ŠKODA Connect location data*
  - *Remote access*
- The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- Škoda Connect services are active.
- Škoda Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Switching the ignition on/off

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

When the ignition is switched on and the automatic gearbox mode is selected, the vehicle starts moving slowly.

- Before selecting the automatic gearbox mode, depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

- If the vehicle is moving, the ignition must always be switched on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

- When getting out, always check that the car is secured with the parking brake.

ⓘ NOTICE

In extremely cold outdoor temperatures, the temperature of the high-voltage battery can drop so much that it may not be possible to start.

The motor can be started again when the temperature of the high-voltage battery has risen sufficiently.

Operating conditions

- The high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.
- Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

  Or:

  Mobile device with activated digital key is in the vehicle interior *(applies to active Bluetooth/ UWB)* .

  Or:

  Mobile device with activated digital key is located in box with Phone box *(applies to NFC)* function.

  Or:

  Temporary access card is located in box with Phone box function.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of losing or damaging the key or mobile device!

The system can also recognize a key or digital key if the key or mobile device remains on the roof of the vehicle.

- Keep the key or mobile device with the digital key with you at all times.

Operation

The ignition is switched on



1. Press the starter button.

Or:

1. Depress the brake pedal.

Switching ignition off

1. Press the starter button.

The ignition is also switched off automatically when the driver leaves the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Ignition cannot be switched on as the system does not recognise the key

illuminated

1. Place the physical key into the cup holder in front.

   Or:

   Place the mobile device with the digital key in the Phone box function box.
2. Press the starter button.
3. If the ignition does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ Neither the physical key nor the digital key may be recognized if the battery in the key or mobile device is discharged or the signal is jammed.

The ignition cannot be switched off

1. Hold the starter button or press it twice.

Automatic gearbox

Modes

Mode selection

1. Move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

   The selector lever will then return to the default position.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



R **Reverse gear**

The **R** mode can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D^B **Forward driving**

with manual selection of the degree of recuperation / with One Pedal Driving function

To select between **D** and **B**, move the selector lever forward.

Unlocking the automatic gearbox

illuminates – automatic gearbox is locked

1. Depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

- Secure the stationary car with pressing the brake pedal.

Operation

Starting up

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Select the required mode with the selector lever.

   READY appears on the instrument cluster screen.
4. Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

1. Leave the selected mode **D/B** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Switch off the ignition.

Freedom of vehicle movement

To allow the vehicle to move freely, it must be ensured that the wheels are unlocked, e.g. when towing or in a car wash. Depending on whether the menu for deactivating the immobiliser in the **N** » *page 136* mode is activated, proceed in one of the following ways.

The menu is activated:

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Depress the brake pedal and select the **N** mode.
3. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system, do not switch off the ignition.

Or:

The menu is deactivated:

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Depress the brake pedal and select the **N** mode.
3. Deactivate the immobiliser in the **N** » *page 136* mode in the Infotainment system.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system, do not switch off the ignition.

⚿ You can then exit the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked.

The immobiliser in the **N** mode is reactivated in the following cases:

- Selecting **D/B** mode or **R**
- Switching the parking brake on
- Switching the ignition on and off

Driving modes

Functionality

The driving modes influence the settings of the following systems, for example:

- Steering system
- Electric drive
- Air conditioning
- Driver assist systems

Overview

Eco mode
The ECO mode is suitable for fuel-efficient driving. Engine power is limited and top speed reduced to 130 km/h. The Climatronic switches to economy mode.

Normal mode
The Normal driving mode is suitable for normal driving style.

Sport mode
The Sport driving mode is suitable for sport driving style.

Individual mode
The Individual mode allows you to individually adjust some of the vehicle systems.

Operation

Selecting driving mode
1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the desired mode.

Or:

1. Press the MODE button on the centre console

   The Infotainment system will display the driving mode menu.
2. Press the MODE button repeatedly to select the desired mode.



Ⓐ Information on the currently selected mode

Ⓑ Driving modes menu

Press on the tile to set the Individual mode.

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Regenerative braking

Functionality
The recuperation stores the electric energy generated when the accelerator pedal is released in the high-voltage battery.

Recuperation availability is reduced, e.g., by the following factors:

- Very high temperature of the high-voltage battery
- Very low temperature of the high voltage battery
- High charge level of the high-voltage battery

A high level of regenerative braking has a similar effect as braking hard with the brake pedal. This can cause a loss of traction and reduce the stability of the car, especially on slippery roads. In adverse weather conditions or when traffic is not clear, we recommend selecting a lower level of regenerative braking or switching off power regeneration completely.

With a higher level of power regeneration, the deceleration increases when the accelerator pedal is released. When the car decelerates significantly, the brake lights will come on.

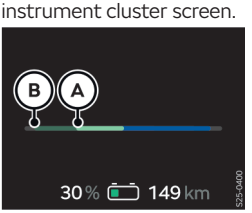
The higher the state of charge of the high-voltage battery, the lower the regenerative braking power.

Power regeneration can also take place when the brake pedal is depressed.

Overview

Indicator
While driving, the regenerative braking indicator informs the driver of the ability of the vehicle to store the electricity generated during braking in the high-voltage battery after releasing the accelerator pedal.

The regenerative braking indicator is shown on the instrument cluster screen.



Ⓐ Currently used regenerative braking

Ⓑ Currently available regenerative braking

If the currently available power regeneration Ⓑ is not limited by anything, it is shown in full on the display. If there are limitations, the display range is reduced accordingly.

Operation

Automatic regenerative braking

Automatic regeneration adapts the regenerative braking power to the current driving situation.

1. Select the **D** automatic gearbox mode.
2. Activate Eco Assistant *» page 156*.

ⓘ Tapping the **–** button or **+** on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual power regeneration setting. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, automatic regeneration is reactivated.

Manual selection of the regeneration level

1. Select the **D** automatic gearbox mode.
2. Deactivate Eco Assistant *» page 156*.
3. Select the recuperation level using the steering wheel buttons.



Ⓐ Higher level of recuperation
Ⓑ Lower level of recuperation

ⓘ If no power regeneration level is selected, the vehicle moves without regenerative braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

D illuminated – light regeneration

D illuminates – medium power regeneration

D illuminates – strong power regeneration

Troubleshooting

Regenerative braking fault

illuminates together with (ABS)
Message indicating a regenerative braking fault

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

One Pedal Driving

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

The One Pedal Driving function has physical and technical limitations. As a result, it may not always react or may react with a delay when braking.

- Always remain alert and be ready to brake with the brake pedal.
- Adapt the speed and distance to other vehicles to the traffic and climatic conditions.
- When driving with a laden vehicle or trailer, set a higher brake force.

Functionality

The One Pedal Driving function allows you to accelerate and brake using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, the vehicle stops according to the set braking intensity.

When the One Pedal Driving function is activated again, the vehicle brakes with the last selected intensity.

The One Pedal Driving braking function uses recuperation.

When using the One Pedal Driving function, the brake pedal can be used to brake.

The One Pedal Driving function can be used for all driving modes of the vehicle.

Operation

Activating

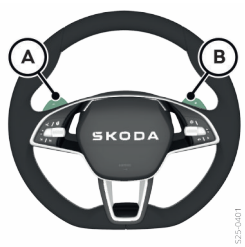
1. Select the **B** automatic gearbox mode.

Setting the braking intensity

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⁘ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Recuperation with B* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the braking intensity.

Or:

1. Adjust the braking force using the buttons on the steering wheel.



Ⓐ Increasing the braking intensity
Ⓑ Decreasing the braking intensity

ⓘ The braking force applied to the vehicle depends on the release of the accelerator pedal.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

B illuminated – standard braking

B illuminated – hard braking

Deactivation

1. Select another mode of the automatic transmission out of B mode.

Restrictions

The One Pedal Driving function is not available in the following cases:

- If adaptive cruise control ACC is activated.
- If Travel Assist is activated.

Troubleshooting

Drive system fault

If a failure of the drive system and the need to prepare for braking is displayed, the One Pedal Driving function may not provide sufficient deceleration.

⚠ or ⚠ is displayed together with the message.

1. Prepare to brake using the brake pedal.
2. Follow the instructions on the digital instrument cluster.

Insufficient braking with One Pedal Driving function

illuminated

1. Depress the brake pedal.

Economical driving style

Overview

Tips for economical driving

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Use the ECO » page 130 driving mode with the Eco assist » page 156.
- Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
- Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 203.
- Remove unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Towing

What you should be mindful of

Towing a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or tow bar

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

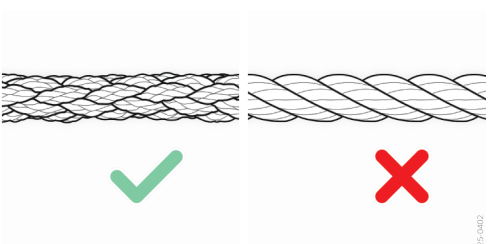
Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

Towing a vehicle with a tow rope is easier and safer than towing with a tow bar.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not use a twisted tow rope.
- Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing.



⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

If the tow rope is twisted, the tow eye can get unscrewed during towing.

- Make sure that the tow rope is not twisted.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

When the ignition is switched off, there is a risk of locking of the steering wheel and the brake booster and power steering are not operational.

- Make sure that the ignition is switched on.

NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged when an unsuitable tow bar is used.

- Always use a tow bar intended for installation in the tow eye and the towing bracket arm.
- If you do not have a suitable tow bar, use a tow rope.

Transportation by tow truck

Have the vehicle towed away by a tow truck when the indicator light appears on the instrument panel display or when the conditions for the towing of a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or a tow bar » page 133, Conditions are not met.

Inform the tow truck operator that it is an electric vehicle.

The vehicle must have all wheels on the tow truck.

Pushing the vehicle

If the technical condition of the vehicle does not meet the condition for towing with a tow rope or tow bar, or if the indicator light appears on the display in the instrument panel, you can push the vehicle to the tow truck, if necessary, at walking speed and to a distance of 100 m max.

Conditions for towing » page 133, Conditions.

Overview

Mounting points

- Front tow eye
- Rear towing eye
- Towing bracket arm fitted from the factory

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket or a retrofitted towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

- To tow the vehicle, attach the eyelet of the towing cable to the towing bracket » page 215.

Conditions

Towing a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or tow bar

The technical condition of the towed vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Functional 12V vehicle battery
- Ignition on
- Functional brakes
- Functional turning of wheels with steering wheel
- Freely turning wheels
- Functional vehicle network
- Functional virtual cockpit screen
- Selected automatic gearbox mode **N**
- Deactivated Auto Hold
- Deactivated Front Assist
- Electric parking brake is switched off

If the technical condition of the vehicle does not meet the condition for towing with a tow rope or tow bar, have the vehicle transported by a tow truck.

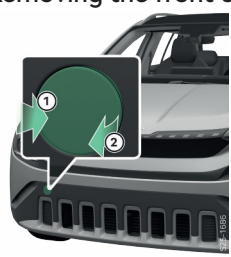
Restrictions

Towing a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or tow bar

- Max. towing speed 50 km/h
- Max. towing distance 50 km

Removing and inserting

Removing the front cap



1. Push on the cap.
2. Remove the cap.

Removing the rear cap



1. Insert the key part or a flat-head screwdriver into the hole.
2. Turn with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.
3. Remove the cap.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Installing the towing eye



1. Screw in the towing eye.
2. Insert a suitable object (e.g. a wheel-brace from another vehicle or similar) through the towing eye.
3. Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert the cover cap.

Self-help

Instructions for the driver of the tow vehicle when towing a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or tow bar

1. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Drive slowly and smoothly.
3. Only accelerate once the rope is taut.
4. Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.
5. Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

Instructions for the driver of the towed vehicle when towing a vehicle with the aid of a tow rope or tow bar

1. Ensure that the key or digital key for the vehicle is in the vehicle.
2. Turn on the ignition.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
4. Deactivate the Auto Hold function.
5. Deactivate the Front Assist function.
6. Select the **N** automatic gearbox mode.
7. Switch the electric parking brake off.
8. Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Risk of the brakes overheating!

- If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

ⓘ NOTICE

The vehicle uses for braking in the **D** or **B** modes mainly regenerative braking, whereby it uses the braking power of the electric motor. Therefore, the brakes are not loaded and the brake discs may be subject to corrosion.

- If road conditions permit, clean the brakes regularly by intermittent braking with the **N** mode selected. The vehicle does not use regenerative braking in this mode.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions

- Vehicle on a flat surface
- Ignition off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, do not continue.
2. Do not refill.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low brake fluid is indicated by the instrument cluster illuminating (ⓘ). However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the **MIN** mark, there may be a leak in the brake system.

- Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. This standard meets the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Replacing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the brake fluid replacement interval is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

illuminated

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

illuminates together with

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

1. Immediately drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Increased brake temperature

illuminated
Report of detected downhill driving

Brakes were heavily loaded on a long downhill run.

1. With increased caution, you can continue driving, using the braking efficiency of regenerative braking » page 130.

ⓘ The higher the state of charge of the high-voltage battery, the lower the regenerative braking power.

ⓘ If the brakes are heavily loaded, the fan in the compartment under the bonnet may come on while the car is moving and also after it has stopped.

High brake temperature

illuminates together with ⚠
High brake temperature report

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake and leave the ignition on.
3. Wait until the next brake overheating message appears and the need to seek a specialist garage.
4. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
5. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

1. If road conditions permit, clean the brakes regularly by intermittent braking with the **N** mode selected.

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster function is restricted or unavailable

1. Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electrical parking brake

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
The parking brake cannot hold a vehicle stationary on a slope in all circumstances, e.g. on a slippery surface.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the spontaneous vehicle movement!

- Always make sure the parking brake is on before leaving the car. Switching on is indicated by illumination of Ⓟ in the instrument panel.

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

- Switch off the parking brake in situations where the vehicle needs to move freely.

Manual activation



1. Press the Ⓟ button.

Ⓟ will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

Automatic activation

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle is stationary or moving at the maximum speed of 3 km/h.
- ✓ The immobiliser is not deactivated in mode **N**.

The parking brake is automatically activated when the ignition is switched off.

Or:

It can be switched on if at least two of the following situations occur:

- Driver's seat relief
- Driver's seat belt unfastened
- The driver's door open

ⓘ Under certain circumstances, the parking brake may also be engaged by an assist system.

Automatic deactivation

The parking brake is automatically deactivated when the automatic gearbox mode is selected.

Settings

Deactivation of immobiliser in mode N

If it is necessary to allow free movement of the vehicle, deactivate the lock as follows:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⊞ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes* > *Roll-away protection* > *Deactivate now*.

Menu for deactivation of immobiliser in mode N

If **N** mode is selected, a menu for deactivating the immobiliser is displayed on the Infotainment system. This can be useful if the vehicle needs to be moved freely, e.g. when being towed or in a car wash.

You can activate or deactivate the menu as follows:

1. On the Infotainment screen, press ⌂ > ⊞ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes* feature > *Roll-away protection* > *Display pop-up window in the N gear* and activate or deactivate the feature.

Troubleshooting

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashing
Message about parking on a slope that is too steep.

1. Move to a parking space with less slope.

Parking brake fault

(!) illuminated
Message indicating a parking brake fault

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. Check the function of the parking brake:
   - Selecting any automatic transmission mode
   - Engaging the parking brake manually

If the following conditions are met, the parking brake functions correctly and you can continue driving:

- ✓ When switched on (Ⓟ), the instrument cluster illuminates.
- ✓ When the automatic gearbox mode is selected, (Ⓟ) turns off.
- ✓ (!) does not illuminate in the instrument panel.

If the problem with the parking brake persists:

1. Park the vehicle safely on a level surface if possible.
2. Secure the vehicle against moving.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

(!) illuminated
Message indicating a parking brake fault

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

When the parking brake is applied, noise is generated

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a fault.

The 12V vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

1. Connect the 12V vehicle battery to a power source such as a 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in the event of a brake system failure

Switching on



1. Press and hold (Ⓟ) button.

   The vehicle starts to brake **strongly** and an acoustic signal sounds.

Switching off

1. Release the (Ⓟ) key.

Or:

1. Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic securing of the car

Use

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle against movement when it stops.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Auto Hold cannot hold a vehicle stationary on a slope in all circumstances, e.g. on a slippery surface.

Securing and unlocking the vehicle

It automatically **locks** Auto Hold the vehicle when **stopping**. HOLD will illuminate on the instrument cluster. You can release the brake pedal.

It automatically **unlocks** Auto Hold the vehicle when **starting off**.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

HOLD illuminated – Auto Hold secures the vehicle against movement

Automatic securing the vehicle with the parking brake

In some cases, the parking brake can take over the securing of the vehicle. Ⓟ will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

- The driver's door is closed.
- Ignition is on.
- Auto Hold is activated.
- Automatic gearbox mode N is not selected.

Settings

Activation and deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > 🚗 > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Auto Hold* item and activate or deactivate the feature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Deactivate Auto Hold before entering a vehicle wash where free movement of the vehicle is required.

One-time deactivation of the deactivated Auto Hold function

If the Auto Hold function is deactivated, it can be activated by the brake pedal, e.g. when the vehicle is stopped on a slope.

1. Stop the vehicle with the brake pedal.
2. Release and quickly depress the brake pedal again.

HOLD will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

After starting, the Auto Hold function will be deactivated again.

ⓘ In some circumstances, some assistance system may use Auto Hold, even if the function is deactivated.

Troubleshooting

Stopping on a slope with a high gradient

HOLD flashing
Message about stopping on a slope with a very high gradient.

1. Be ready to brake with the brake pedal.

Electronic engine sound (e-Sound)

Functionality

e-Sound generates an electronic engine sound when driving at speeds up to 25 km/h.

ⓘ e-Sound cannot be switched off.

ⓘ The Sport driving mode has its own type of engine sound.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Despite the e-Sound, the vehicle may not be clearly heard by other road users.

Settings

The type of engine sound can be set in Individual » *page 130* driving mode.

Troubleshooting

e-Sound function fault


illuminated

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)
ESC helps to stabilise the vehicle in borderline situations, e.g. when the vehicle starts skidding. ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC intervenes

ESC Sport
ESC Sport enables a more sporty driving style.

 illuminated – ESC Sport activated

Traction control (ASR)
ASR helps to stabilise the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when they start spinning.

 flashes – ASR intervenes

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)
ABS helps to maintain control of the vehicle during intense braking. An ABS intervention is signalled by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels on the driven axle lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the engine braking effect and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)
EDS helps to stabilise the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with varying grip under individual wheels. EDS brakes the spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)
XDS+ helps to keep the vehicle turning by effectively braking the wheels on the inside of the turn.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps to decelerate and stabilise the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions:
- Following a front, side and rear collision of a certain force.
- The speed at the time of impact exceeded 10 km/h.
- The brakes, ESC and other required systems remain functional after the impact.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)
TSA helps to stabilise the trailer combination. If the trailer combination starts to sway, TSA stabilises it by braking individual wheels of the vehicle.

Operating conditions:
- The towing bracket is supplied from the factory or purchased from the Škoda Genuine Accessory range.
- The trailer is connected to the towing bracket socket.
- The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)
eBKV makes it easier to depress the brake pedal. At the same time, it allows the high-voltage battery to be recharged by regenerative braking.

When the ignition is switched off, eBKV is limited or unavailable.

Regenerative braking.
Regenerative braking generates energy that is stored into the high-voltage battery. The strength of the braking effect depends on the selected driving mode and the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

Regenerative braking may cause brake pedal pulsation and fluctuating deceleration.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Deactivating ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

- Driving with snow chains
- Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
- Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Activation/deactivation of ESC Sport

1. On the Infotainment screen, press > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with *Brakes* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Brakes*.
4. Activate or deactivate the function.

When activated, lights up in the instrument panel.

The fades out upon deactivation.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction / ESC or ASR switched off by the system

illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ABS malfunction

illuminated

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

illuminates together with

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster fault

illuminated

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle in front of you and warns you if you do not keep a safe distance. In an emergency situation, it helps to avoid a collision by braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – failure to keep a safe distance

illuminated – warning if there is a risk of collision

Emergency braking in case of collision risk

When there is a risk of collision, will illuminate as a warning. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

At speeds up to 30 km/h, the vehicle will start braking without warning.

Emergency braking can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.

The brake system pressure is increased during emergency braking. The brake pedal cannot be depressed within its normal range.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is over 5 km/h.

Restrictions

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Front Assist has a limited response to vehicles and objects moving in the opposite direction.
If the vehicle is approaching an obstacle at a very high speed, the system's response may be delayed.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- Approximately 30 seconds after starting (indicator light illuminated on the instrument cluster)
- When negotiating a steep curve
- During ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Deactivating/activating the system

1. On the infotainment screen, press > > > *Safety* > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Deactivating/activating system

1. On the infotainment screen, press > > > *Safety* > .

- *Swerve support* – when activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by braking and assisting steering control.
- *Front Cross Traffic Assist* – when activated, the system can help avoid a side collision with a vehicle when crossing an intersection

Or:

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride*.

- *Distance warning* – activating/deactivating the display of distance warning

The function can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

OFF illuminated

ⓘ Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist unavailable

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
4. If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
5. If the brake lights are working and Front Assist remains unavailable, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There has been an unfounded warning or system intervention

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. If the system still does not function properly, deactivate Front Assist.
4. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist – Intersection Assist
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq-crossroad-assist

Pedestrian and cyclist detection

Functionality

Pedestrian and cyclist detection helps to avoid collisions with pedestrians or cyclists moving across or along the road by emergency braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – danger of collision

Risk of collision at speeds between 5–30 km/h

The system initiates emergency braking.

Risk of collision at speeds between 30–85 km/h

The system first warns of a collision risk. If the driver does not react, emergency braking of the vehicle will be activated.

Operating conditions

Front Assist is activated.

- The vehicle speed is between 5 and 85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter regulates the maximum speed of the vehicle to a set speed limit.

Speed limiter with predictive control

The speed limiter with predictive control is an extension of the speed limiter system.

If the system detects a speed limit, a message will appear on the instrument cluster screen.

The system automatically sets the speed limit according to the detected speed limit, even if the speed limiter is deactivated.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

LIM Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

LIM illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

flashing – the set limit is exceeded

When cruise control starts, the set speed limit is displayed.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is over 30 km/h.

Operation

1. To switch on the speed limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Select the entry for the speed limiter in the instrument cluster.



RESUME Starting or restoring regulation[1)]

CANCEL Interrupting regulation

SPEED + Increasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SPEED – Decreasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SET Starting regulation

Switching between speed limiter, ACC and Travel Assist

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Exceeding the limit

1. Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Interrupting cruise control

- Shift the selector lever to position **CANCEL**
- After ESC intervention
- After ASR deactivation
- After ESC Sport activation
- If the brakes are overheated

Restrictions

The function of the speed limiter with predictive control may be limited, e.g. in the following cases:

- Navigation map material not up to date or not available
- Traffic sign recognition unavailable
- Insufficient reception of GPS signal

---

1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

- Driving without active route guidance
- Changing the route calculated by the navigation system
- Adverse weather conditions

Settings

Activation/deactivation of speed limiter with predictive control

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride* > .
2. Activate or deactivate the speed limiter.

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter fault

LIM illuminated

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. If the system still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

What you should be mindful of

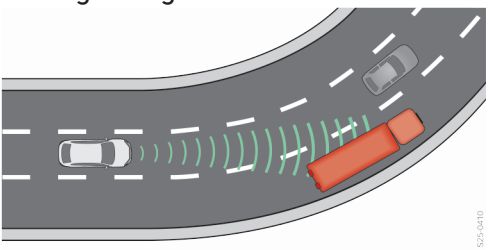
⚠ WARNING

- In the following situations, increase your attention and be prepared to intervene.

Regulating the speed according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

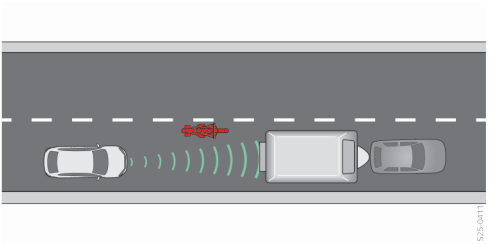
If your vehicle is travelling faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side at speeds over 80 km/h, your vehicle's speed may be regulated according to this vehicle.

Passing through a corner



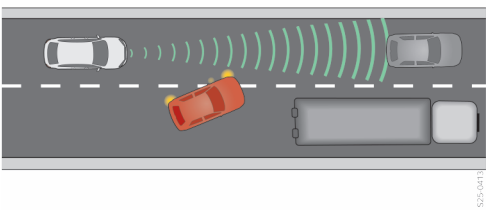
A vehicle in the adjacent lane may enter the monitored area when going around a corner. Your vehicle's speed will be regulated according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel



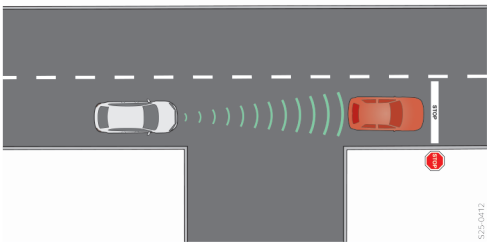
ACC will only detect a narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel in the adjacent lane only when it enters the monitored area.

Other vehicles changing lanes



ACC may not be able to detect in time a vehicle that changes lanes right in front of you.

Stationary vehicle



ACC **may not react to a stationary vehicle**.

Vehicles with special cargo or special extensions

Cargo or extensions protruding outside the vehicle may not be detected by ACC.

Functionality

ACC control

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches a vehicle in front of you, ACC will automatically maintain the set vehicle distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to any objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ⓘ ACC is primarily designed for driving on the motorway.

pACC (Predictive adaptive cruise control)

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts the speed based on information obtained from the following sources:

- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

pACC with the use of shared online data

For a better evaluation of the situation, the system uses data shared with other vehicles (depending on vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the particular vehicle and on the specific market).

If the vehicle uses online shared data, the system regulates the vehicle speed according to the local average speed shared by other vehicles. According to this speed, the system regulates only if the speed is lower than the currently set.

To use shared data, the following conditions must be met:

- Travel Assist or ACC are activated.
- The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- *ŠKODA Connect location data* (location sharing and vehicle and user data) **» page 121** is on.
- The vehicle has an active Online Data licence for Travel Assist.

Response to traffic light

If the system detects a red traffic light, the vehicle will automatically stop (depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market).

If there is no vehicle in front of you at a stop, it is necessary to start manually.

Response to traffic light is not available in the following cases:

- The vehicle is travelling on the motorway.
- Travel Assist is not available.

Turning function

If you indicate your intention to turn by moving the turn signal lever, the system can decelerate the vehicle before the next likely turning point. Deceleration can occur regardless of whether navigation is in progress.

Cruise speed

If you set a desired speed lower than the current maximum permissible speed when driving on the motorway, the system adopts this speed as the cruising speed after a short time. The vehicle then does not automatically accelerate above this set speed. The cruising speed is available from approximately 90 km/h.

Speed range

ACC allows you to adjust the speed within a range of 20–210 km/h depending on vehicle equipment.

If you activate the control on a vehicle at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 20 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the vehicle in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the vehicle in front of you in five different levels.

⚠ WARNING

- Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.

- In poor weather conditions, always set a greater distance.

START-STOP system

The vehicle may use ACC to slow down and come to a full stop and start again automatically.

The vehicle's readiness for automatic start is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster screen.

The auto-start readiness is time-limited and can be extended in one of the following ways:

- Shift the selector lever to position **RESUME**
- Hold the steering wheel *(applies to vehicles with hand detection on the steering wheel)*

Manual vehicle start

- Depress the accelerator pedal
- Shift the selector lever to position **RESUME**

⚠ WARNING

- Check the roadway and be prepared to brake before each start.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle detected in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – ACC is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

1. Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – ACC is controlling the vehicle speed according to the permitted speed limit

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the cancelled speed limit

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching priority in the journey

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching traffic light

illuminated – ACC is controlling the vehicle speed based on the approaching roundabout

illuminated – ACC is controlling the vehicle speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching left turn

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching right turn

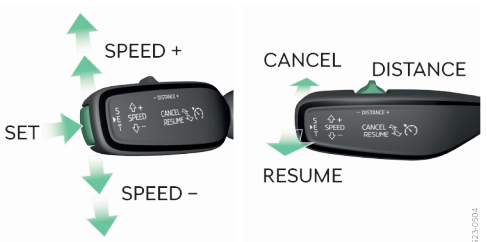
illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the left

illuminated – ACC regulates the speed of the vehicle according to the approaching exit to the right

If the symbol illuminates white, an approaching event has been detected, but no regulation takes place.

Operation

1. To switch on the ACC, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the ACC entry in the instrument cluster.



RESUME Starting or restoring regulation[1)]

CANCEL Interrupting regulation

SPEED + Increasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

SPEED – Decreasing the limit in steps:
1 km/h (first sprung position)
10 km/h (second sprung position)

DISTANCE Setting the distance level

SET Starting regulation

1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Switching between ACC, speed limiter and Travel Assist

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Starting regulation

1. Tap **SET**.

   The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

If the speed is not stored in memory, you can also start the current speed control by moving the lever to the **RESUME** position.

Resuming the control

1. If the speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the **RESUME** position.

   The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster screen.

Rejecting a speed limit or an approaching event

If pACC displays an upcoming event or a speed other than the saved speed on the instrument cluster, you can reject them as follows:

1. Put the selector lever to **RESUME** position.

   The vehicle will be regulated at the previously set speed.

Or:

1. Tap **SET**.

   The vehicle will be regulated at the current speed.

Immediate takeover of the speed limit

If pACC displays a higher speed than the saved speed on the instrument cluster screen, you can overtake it immediately in the following manner:

1. Move the lever to the **SPEED +** or **SPEED –** position.

Or:

1. Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle will accelerate to the newly set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

- When the brake pedal is depressed while driving
- Shift the selector lever to position **CANCEL**
- After ESC intervention
- After ASR deactivation
- After ESC Sport activation

Setting the distance level

1. Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The distance set-up is shown on the screen.

1. Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

1. Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Restrictions

Do not use ACC in the following cases:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

The pACC function may be restricted in the following cases:

- Navigation map material not up to date or not available
- Traffic sign recognition unavailable
- Insufficient reception of GPS signal
- Driving without active route guidance
- Changing the route calculated by the navigation system
- Adverse weather conditions

If the navigation map data are out of date, pACC may react to no longer existing speed limits and change the vehicle speed unexpectedly.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride*.

- *Speed limit response* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit
- *Road layout response* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
- *Response to traffic light* – switching on/off the regulation according to the detected traffic light
- *Response to the Stop, give way! sign* – switching on/off the regulation according to the detected STOP sign
- *Response to local average speed* – switching on/off the regulation according to online shared data

The function can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

ACC unavailable

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
4. If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
5. If the brake lights are working and ACC remains unavailable, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist lane keeping assistant

Use

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is guided by demarcation lines, which may be boundary lines, road edges or objects such as kerbs or crash barrier.

The system is designed primarily for driving on the motorway and well-marked roads.

Functionality

If the vehicle approaches the demarcation line, the system will turn the steering wheel in the direction away from the demarcation line and warns by vibrating the steering wheel. The steering intervention can be manually corrected.

If the system determines that there is no driver activity or that the steering wheel is not held correctly during an intervention, a warning message will appear in the instrument cluster prompting the driver to stay in the centre of the lane or to take control of the vehicle.

If you do not react to the warning, Emergency Assist may be activated depending on vehicle equipment » page 155.

The following information applies to vehicles without Side Assist.

The system will not intervene when changing lanes with the turn signal on.

The following information applies to vehicles with Side Assist.

When, while changing lanes, Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with the indicator light in the exterior mirror housing, the system will intervene even if the direction light is on.

Reduced mode

When reduced mode is activated, the system does not intervene in the steering when crossing dashed lane markings, only issues a warning by means of steering wheel vibration.

The system intervenes in the following cases:

- The camera in the rear view mirror evaluates the driver's inattention or fatigue.
- The system evaluates a dangerous traffic situation, e.g. a vehicle driving in the opposite direction.
- If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with a warning light in the exterior mirror housing *(applies to vehicles with Side Assist)* .

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

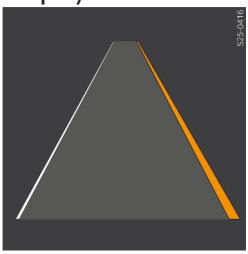
Illuminated – the system is activated and not prepared to intervene

Illuminated – the system is activated and prepared to intervene

illuminated – the system is intervening

illuminated – system is deactivated

Display view



Highlighted right bar: the system intervenes when the vehicle is approaching the demarcation line on the right.

Steering wheel vibration warning

The steering wheel vibrates in the following situations:

- The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.
- When crossing a dashed lane marking with reduced mode activated.
- The vehicle crosses the lane marking without the turn signal indicator being switched on *(applies to vehicles without Side Assist)* .
- The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with a warning light in the exterior mirror housing, the steering wheel vibrates even if the turn signal is on *(applies to vehicles with Side Assist)* .

If the steering wheel vibrates, correct the steering control.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is over 65 km/h.
- The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The sensor has obstructed view due to an obstacle, dirty glass, or a vehicle in front of you.
- The system is not able to detect a dangerous traffic situation in the opposite direction.
- The camera function in the rear view mirror is unavailable or the system is not able to detect fatigue or inattention of the driver.
- Side Assist is unavailable *(applies to vehicles with Side Assist)* .
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on *(applies only to some countries)* .

Deactivating/activating the system

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Lanes* > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

ⓘ Activation or deactivation of the system is possible in the » page 92 infotainment control center, if Lane Assist button is set.

Activating/deactivating reduced mode

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Lanes* > > *Reduced mode*.

The function can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing on the centre console.

ⓘ After switching off ignition, the last reduced mode setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
2. Switch the ignition off, and after a while, switch it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

System restriction message

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.

2. Check that the camera in the rear view mirror is not covered or damaged.
3. Switch the ignition off, and after a while, switch it on again.
4. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed and distance from the vehicle in front of you.

On vehicles with Side Assist, it also helps to change lanes.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the following functions:

- Lane Assist
- ACC
- Attention assist system
- Side Assist (depending on vehicle equipment)

ⓘ Travel Assist is primarily intended for driving on motorways and well-marked roads.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.
- Follow the instructions in the description of Lane Assist and ACC.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress

Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress

illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

If you do not react to the warning, the system will switch off automatically or, depending on vehicle equipment, Emergency Assist will be activated » *page 155*.

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Travel Assist with the use of shared online data

For a better evaluation of the situation, the system uses data shared with other vehicles (depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market).

To use shared data, the following conditions must be met:

- Travel Assist is activated.
- The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- *ŠKODA Connect location data* (location sharing and vehicle and user data) » *page 121* is on.
- The vehicle has an active Online Data licence for Travel Assist.

Assisted lane change

The following information applies to vehicles with Side Assist.

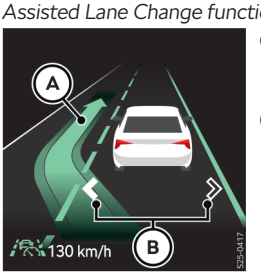
This function allows you to automatically change lanes by moving the turn signal lever.

The function is designed for driving on motorways only.

ⓘ Depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market.

Display view

The following information applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.



Ⓐ Lane marked during the overtaking manoeuvre.

Ⓑ The arrows showing the status of the Assisted Lane Change.

- Full arrow – you can change lanes in the direction of the arrow. The adjacent lane will be highlighted.
- Contour arrow – it is not possible to change the lane in the direction of the arrow.

If the system determines that it is safe to change lanes, the display will show a solid arrow pointing in that direction.

1. Move the turn signal lever. The vehicle will change lanes.

 Illuminated – function activated and no lane change possible

 Illuminated – lane change possible in the direction of the arrow

 Illuminated – indicated lane change path

Operating conditions

Applies to vehicles without the Assisted Lane Change function.

- ACC is activated.
- Attention Assist system is available.
- The vehicle speed is maximum 200 km/h.
- The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

The following information applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.

- Travel Assist is activated.
- ACC, Side Assist and Attention Assist system is available.
- The Assisted Lane Change function is activated.
- Driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- The vehicle is travelling on the motorway.
- The vehicle speed is over 65 km/h.
- The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Restrictions

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- The sensor has obstructed view due to an obstacle, dirty glass, or a vehicle in front of you.
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is going through a difficult traffic situation.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.
- Internet connection not available.
- Attention Assist system is not available.

In addition to these limitations, observe the ACC limitations » *page 142*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

1. Shift the ACC lever to position **RESUME**.

Or:

1. Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Activation/deactivation of Assisted lane change

The function can be activated or deactivated only in the infotainment system by pressing ⌂ > ⠿ > (🚗) > *Lanes* > *Assist Lane Change*.

The function can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing (🚗) on the centre console.

Switching between Travel Assist, ACC, and the speed limiter

1. Press the (🚗) button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

ⓘ After you switch off the ignition, the last selected mode is automatically saved.

Deactivation

1. Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

1. Shift the ACC lever to position **CANCEL** » *page 144*.

ⓘ Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » page 147, ACC » page 146 and Attention Assist » page 154.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Travel Assist

Assisted lane change – how it works
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-epiq-assisted-lane-change

Side Assist lane change assistant

Use

The system warns of vehicles that may pose a danger when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

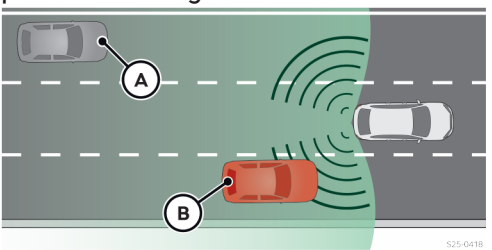
The system warns of an approaching vehicle by means of a warning light in the external mirror housing on the side where the vehicle is detected.

The indicator light brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

⚠ WARNING

In strong sunlight, the indicator light may be hard to see.

Driving situations in which the system provides warning



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle Ⓐ. The faster the Ⓐ vehicle is approaching, the sooner the warning light starts alerting you.

Vehicle Ⓑ is being overtaken by your vehicle at a speed not higher than 10 km/h. The warning light does not indicate if you are overtaking faster than this.

The indicator light

illuminated – there is another vehicle behind your vehicle

flashing – there is another vehicle behind your vehicle and on the same side, the direction light is on

On vehicles with Lane Assist, the warning light also flashes if your vehicle crosses the line of demarcation towards the approaching vehicle. The system will also vibrate the steering wheel.

A precondition is that Lane Assist with steering wheel vibration are activated and that the line of demarcation between the vehicles is detected.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is over 12 km/h.
- No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Restrictions

The system does not detect the lane width. Therefore, in the following cases, for example, it may warn you of a vehicle moving in a further lane:

- A vehicle is driving on a roadway with narrow lanes or on the edge of the lane.
- The vehicle is negotiating a bend.

The system may warn of objects along the road, such as high barriers, noise barriers or tunnel walls.

In the following cases, the system may not warn of a vehicle or may warn incorrectly:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve or roundabout.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- The 12V car battery has been disconnected – it is necessary to activate the function by tilting in and out the rear view mirrors again » page 60.

Settings

Automatic activation

Only valid for certain countries.

Side Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activating/deactivating and setting brightness

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Lanes* > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Side Assist system malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Use

Traffic sign recognition shows traffic signs on the instrument cluster screen. It also warns you if you exceed the speed limit or if there is a risk of not stopping at a red light.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

- Traffic signs in the traveled route section
- A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Traffic signs displayed

- Speed limit
- No overtaking
- Warning signs
- Additional traffic signs, e.g. speed limit on wet roads

Driving on a road without a speed limit

If you are on a road without a speed limit, the traffic sign will appear on the screen.

Example of traffic sign display



Status display on the instrument cluster screen

lights up – unavailable map data

OFF lights up – the set warning is not in accordance with the legislation

Speed units

The speed data on the displayed traffic signs are in the units valid in the respective country.

For example, can mean 30 km/h or 30 mph, depending on the country.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The sensor is dazzled by the sun or the lights of oncoming traffic.
- The sensor has obstructed view due to an obstacle or a vehicle in front of you.
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- Traffic signs are obscured, damaged or not up to standard.
- Traffic signs are mounted on lighted shields with flashing lights.
- Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.

Settings

Automatic activation

When the ignition is switched on, the system is activated automatically to a setting that complies with legislation.

Activating/deactivating and setting

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride*.

- *Speed warning* – setting a warning if the speed limit is exceeded
  - *Warning tone* – setting a audible warning if the speed limit is exceeded
  - *Tone when speed limit is changed*
  - *Deactivated with cruise control assist* – Deactivating speed warning when driving with pACC or Travel Assist.
  - *Speed warning* – increase of the speed limit for a warning if the speed limit is exceeded[1)]
- *Traffic light warning and warning* – setting the red light warning

The function can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Proactive passenger protection Crew Protect Assist

Use

The Proactive Crew Protection system activates measures to protect the occupants of the vehicle in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, the following safety measures are activated:

- Hazard warning lights start flashing.
- Open windows begin to close to a small gap.
- The front seat belts are pulled against the body.

ⓘ The system's response depends on the selected driving mode.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the system is intervening

Risk of frontal collision

The following information applies to vehicles with Front Assist.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a frontal collision.

Risk of rear-end collision

The following information applies to vehicles with Side Assist.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent rear-end collision risk.

Danger if the driver is not active

The following information applies to vehicles with Emergency Assist.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent danger when the driver is inactive.

Hazards when crossing the intersection

The following information applies to vehicles with Front Cross Traffic Assist.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a side-impact collision when passing through an intersection.

Restrictions

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

- When ASR is deactivated
- When ESC Sport is activated
- When the Sport driving mode is selected
- When reversing
- In the event of ESC, reversible seatbelt, or airbag system malfunction
- In the event of a malfunction or restricted operation of Front Assist
- In the event of a malfunction or restricted operation of Emergency Assist
- In the event of a malfunction or restricted operation of Side Assist
- In the event of malfunction or restricted operation of the Front Cross Traffic Assist

---

1) The *Tolerance* item means an increase of the speed limit by approximately 1 km/h and 3% of the speed limit.

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Proactive passenger protection fault

 illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver alert system monitors driver's behaviour when driving the vehicle and warns against driver fatigue.

It also uses a camera in the rearview mirror to evaluate the driver's view and head movements.

ⓘ The camera does not record or send any image.

If the system detects signs of fatigue, it recommends taking a break. The illuminates on the instrument cluster screen, an audible signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

Driver alert system is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

⚠ WARNING

The assist system does not warn if you fall into a micro-sleep.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

 illuminated – detected fatigue, recommendations for a break in driving

 illuminated – detected critical fatigue or sleep

 illuminated – critical driver condition detected

If you do not respond to the warning, Emergency assist may be activated » page 155.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- Stopping and switching off the ignition
- Stopping, unbuckling the seat belt and opening the driver's door
- Stopping for more than 30 mins

ⓘ In some situations, the system may recommend a break incorrectly.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is over 50 km/h.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The view of the camera in the rear-view mirror is restricted, e.g. due to covering, fogging, etc.
- If the camera is dazzled, e.g. by sunlight
- Driver eyes covering
- Strong driver distraction due to external influences
- Mirror or driver's seat incorrectly adjusted

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

1. On the infotainment screen, press > > > *Safety* > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of fatigue detection

 illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. Check that the camera in the rear view mirror is not covered or damaged.
3. Check the system settings in the infotainment menu.
4. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Limitations or unavailability of function of the camera in the rear view mirror

 illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. Check that the camera in the rear view mirror is not covered or damaged.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Inattention detection

Functionality

Attention assist system monitors driver's behaviour when driving the vehicle and warns against driver inattention. It evaluates the level of distraction, e.g. when operating the infotainment system or the steering wheel controls.

It also uses a camera in the rearview mirror to evaluate the driver's view and head movements.

🛈 The camera does not record or send any image.

If the system detects insufficient attention, the illuminates on the instrument cluster screen, an audible signal sounds and a warning message is displayed.

⚠ WARNING

Driver inattention assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – detected inattention, recommendations to pay attention to driving

illuminated – detected critical inattention

If you do not respond to the warning, Emergency assist may be activated » page 155.

Operating conditions

The vehicle speed is over 20 km/h.

Restrictions

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The view of the camera in the rear-view mirror is restricted, e.g. due to covering, fogging, etc.
- If the camera is dazzled, e.g. by sunlight
- Driver eyes covering
- Strong driver distraction due to external influences
- Mirror or driver's seat incorrectly adjusted

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

1. On the infotainment screen, press > > > Safety > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of driver inattention assistant

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. Check that the camera in the rear view mirror is not covered or damaged.
3. Check the system settings in the infotainment menu.
4. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Limitations or unavailability of function of the camera in the rear view mirror

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. Check that the camera in the rear view mirror is not covered or damaged.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Emergency Assist assistant for emergency situations

Use

The Emergency situations assistant recognises driver inactivity that may be caused by, for example, sudden

loss of consciousness. The system then takes action to stop the vehicle as safely as possible.

Functionality

If the assistant detects driver inactivity

- An acoustic signal sounds and the display of instrument cluster shows the warning message of Lane Assist » page 146 system, Travel Assist » page 148, Attention Assist system » page 154 or Driver Alert system » page 154.
- If the driver does not resume control after repeated warnings, the warning lights will come on and the car will automatically brake.
- Automatic braking of the vehicle may also be activated after a warning message is briefly displayed when the situation is assessed as an emergency by the assistant.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, a vehicle driving on the motorway may automatically change lanes and safely stop on the edge of the carriageway.
- When the vehicle stops, the parking brake is applied and, depending on the vehicle's equipment, an emergency call may be initiated.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster screen

SOS illuminated – the system is intervening

Interrupting automatic braking

- By strongly depressing the brake or accelerator pedal
- By abruptly swivelling the steering wheel from side to side

Operating conditions

- Lane Assist or Travel Assist are activated and the demarcation lines of the lanes are detected.
- Driver Alert System or Attention Assist activated

Settings

Automatic activation

Emergency assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Emergency Assist malfunction

SOS illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Automatic recuperation assist Eco Assist

Use

Eco Assist supports an economical way of driving and recuperation using the instructions on the instrument cluster screen.

Functionality

If the system evaluates a possible improvement in driving economy, the following information will be displayed in the instrument cluster:

- A symbol of an upcoming event, e.g. speed limit, intersection, etc.
- – recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle adjusts its speed and power regeneration to the current situation.

Pressing **–** or **+** button on the steering wheel with activated Eco Assist temporarily activates the manual recuperation level. When the accelerator pedal is depressed, automatic recuperation is reactivated » page 131.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

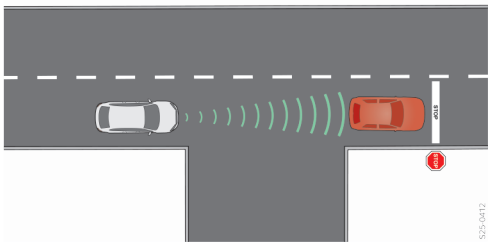
- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

If your vehicle approaches a vehicle in front of you, it can Eco Assist using the recuperation and brakes to slow down to a stop. Then it is necessary to start off manually.

⚠ WARNING

Eco Assist does not react to any objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

Stationary vehicle



Eco Assist **may not react to a stationary vehicle**.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – Eco Assist is not braking sufficiently

1. Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

illuminated – Eco Assist regulates

illuminated – detected vehicle in front of you

illuminated – detected speed limit in front of you

illuminated – detected roundabout in front of you

illuminated – detected intersection in front of you

illuminated – detected left turn ahead

illuminated – detected right turn ahead

illuminated – detected junction ahead

Restrictions

The feature is not available in the following cases:

- When ACC is activated
- When the Travel Assist system is activated
- When the Sport driving mode is selected
- In the event of a malfunction or restricted operation of Front Assist
- If the brakes are overheated

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride* > .

The system can also be activated or deactivated in the menu by pressing button on the centre console.

Troubleshooting

Eco Assist unavailable

Function unavailability or limitation message.

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Clean the windscreen in the area of the assist systems camera.
3. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
4. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Parking assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Use

The assistant is designed to warn the driver acoustically and visually of an approaching obstacle when parking.

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system screen and an acoustic signal sounds.

The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

Manoeuvre braking

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system activates emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

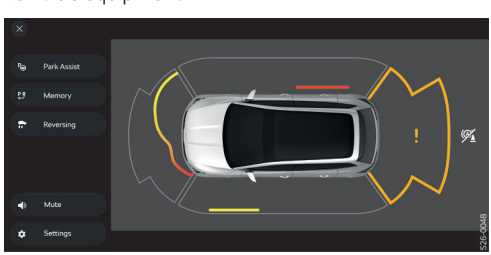
The system may also initiate emergency braking when the accelerator pedal is depressed sharply, which it evaluates as a replacement of the brake and accelerator pedals.

Maneuvering braking is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Maneuvering braking can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system by pressing > > > > .

Overview

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



Switching off/on the audible alarm

Manoeuvring braking deactivated

! System fault

! Dirty or covered sensors

Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres

Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres

Operating conditions

- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h.
- No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Switching on

1. Engage reverse gear.

Or:

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

Automatic activation when driving forward

When approaching an obstacle at speeds below 10 km/h.

Emergency braking is not activated during automatic activation.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

Automatic deactivation

The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

Restrictions

In the following cases, for example, the system may not issue an obstacle warning, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The detected obstacles moving.
- Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

You can view the automatic activation and volume adjustment menu in the following manner:

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select Parking Aid

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select Parking Aid

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⁘ > P > ⚙ in the Infotainment system.
2. Select Parking Aid

Troubleshooting

Park Pilot parking aid malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas appear on the Infotainment system display

1. Move the vehicle forward or backward a few metres.
2. If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

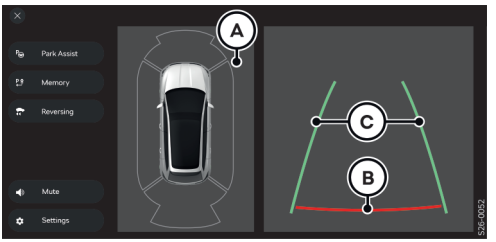
Rear view camera

Functionality

When reversing, the Infotainment screen will show the area behind the vehicle with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a washer. Washing is done automatically together with the rear window washing or via the function button on the Infotainment display.

Overview



Ⓐ Parking aid preview

Ⓑ Distance about 40 cm

Ⓒ The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Overview of function keys

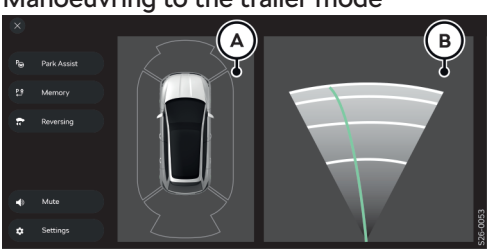
Rear view monitoring behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

Rear view camera washer button

Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode



Ⓐ Parking aid preview

Ⓑ Guiding the vehicle to the trailer drawbar

On a vehicle with a factory fitted towing device, this mode helps to guide the vehicle towards the trailer's draw bar. The screen shows the track line for guiding to the trailer.

Operating conditions

- Ignition on
- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

1. Engage reverse gear.

Or:

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > P on the Infotainment system screen.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

Or:

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press ✕ on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

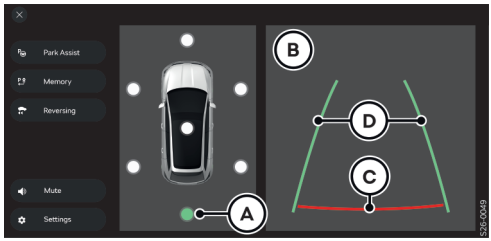
Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen, including narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

Monitoring the surroundings Top View

Use

Monitoring the surroundings assists with parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle's surroundings.

Overview



Ⓐ Selecting the camera view

Ⓑ Selected camera view

Ⓒ Distance about 40 cm

Ⓓ The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Selecting the camera view

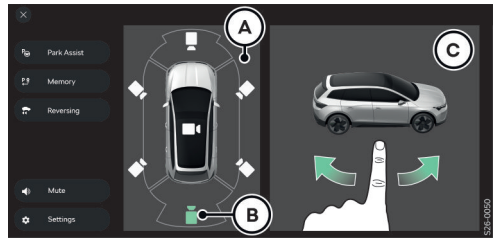
Select the view by touching the area next to, in front of or behind the silhouette of the vehicle on the Infotainment system screen. The selected area will be temporarily highlighted.

Overview of function keys

The display of the function keys varies depending on the selected camera view.

- Rear view monitoring behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- Car wash entry mode
- Transparent vehicle silhouette
- Distance to obstacle colour marking
- 3D mode
- Rear view camera washer button

3D mode



Ⓐ Parking aid preview

Ⓑ Selecting the camera view

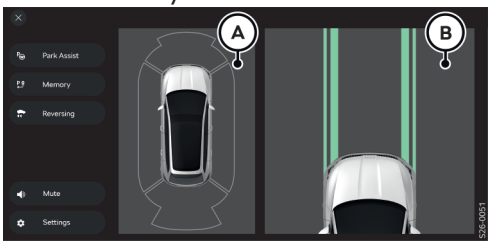
Ⓒ 3D view with moving perspective

- To turn on the 3D camera view, press 360° on the Infotainment system screen.
- To change the view, press 3D car silhouette on the screen and slide your finger to adjust the view in the desired direction.

  Or:

  Press the camera view selection in the Park Distance Control view.

Car wash entry mode



Ⓐ Parking aid preview

Ⓑ Front of the vehicle with a straight-ahead indication

The mode helps the driver by using the indicated driving path when entering the car wash.

1. To turn on, press on the infotainment system display.

Operating conditions

- Ignition on
- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

1. Engage reverse gear.

Or:

1. Press the PARK button on the centre console

Or:

1. Tap > > P on the Infotainment system screen.

Switching off

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press the PARK button on the centre console

Or:

1. Disengage reverse gear.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some objects may not be sufficiently visible, such as narrow posts, wire fences, grates, or uneven roadways.

The image under the transparent silhouette of the car contains historical data that is erased after a short period of stopping the car.

Objects in the vicinity of the corners of the vehicle may be out of the field of view of the cameras and therefore may not be shown on the display.

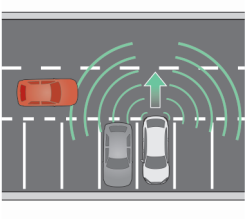
Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

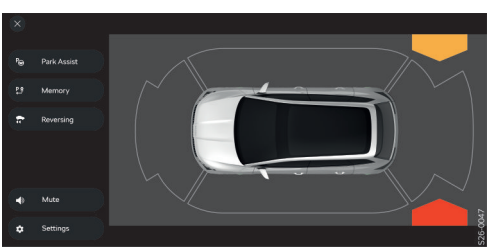


Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles when reversing.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system activates emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

System signalling

A graphic warning will be displayed on the Infotainment screen when an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle. A continuous audible signal sounds when reversing.



Vehicle in collision zone – risk of collision!

Approaching vehicle

Operating conditions

- No accessories are plugged into the towing device socket.

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not warn you of an approaching object or may warn you incorrectly:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.
- The object is approaching at a very high speed.
- The 12V car battery has been disconnected – it is necessary to activate the function by turning the steering wheel to the end position to the left and right.

⚠ WARNING

The system may not alert you to people behind the car.

Settings

Automatic activation

Only valid for certain countries.

Rear traffic alert assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

You can view the system activation/deactivation menu in the following manner:

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > P > ⚙ in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Troubleshooting

Rear Traffic Alert malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle

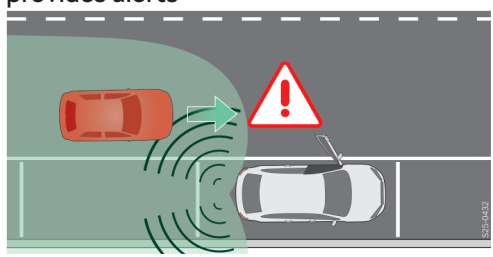
Use

The door release assistant warns of approaching objects when opening the door to prevent a possible collision.

Functionality

The assistant monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

Driving situations in which the system provides alerts



Situations in which the system alerts

- The warning light in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected flashes and then it illuminates.
- A warning tone is emitted.

Alert if there is no imminent collision

- The warning light in the wing mirror cover on the side where the object is detected illuminates.

ⓘ The indicator light will illuminate even if the doors are closed and the automatic gearbox is in P mode.

Operating conditions

- The vehicle is stationary.
- Ignition is on.
- The speed of the approaching object is greater than 2 km/h.
- No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

The assistant remains active for approximately 3 minutes:

- After the ignition is switched off
- After the vehicle is unlocked and the door opened

Restrictions

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.
- The object is approaching at a very high speed.
- The 12V car battery has been disconnected – it is necessary to activate the function by tilting in and out the rear view mirrors again » *page 60*.

Settings

Automatic activation

Only valid for certain countries.

Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

You can view the system activation/deactivation menu in the following manner:

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear.
2. Press ⚙ on the Infotainment system screen.
3. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Or:

1. Tap ⌂ > ⠿ > P > ⚙ in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the item for Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Smart parking assistant

Use

The assistant is designed to automatically park the vehicle in a row of vehicles parked in parallel or perpendicularly.

Functionality

Smart parking assistant functionality:

- Finding suitable parking spaces.
- Automatic reversing into a parallel or perpendicular parking space.
- Automatic forward parking into a perpendicular parking space.
- Pulling out in front from a parallel parking space.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of a parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision during the parking manoeuvre, it activates emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the impact.

Operating conditions

- ASR does not intervene.
- The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.
- No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

Switching on/off

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

When the system is on, the symbol P PARK in the button is illuminated.

Finding a parking spot

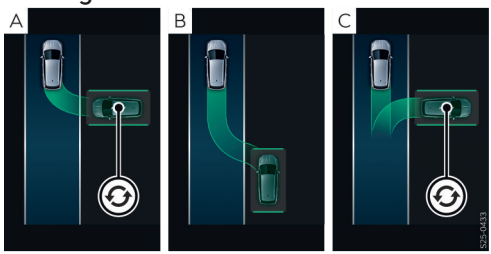
1. Drive along the line of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
   - When looking for a perpendicular parking space, drive at a speed of less than 20 km/h.
   - When looking for a parallel parking space, drive at a speed of less than 40 km/h.

Before the parking manoeuvre

1. Once you have found a parking space, pull over and follow the instructions on the infotainment display.

2. If the system offers more than one parking space, select the preferred one by pressing it on the Infotainment display.

Parking manoeuvre variants



A Rear parking in a perpendicular parking space

B Rear parking in a parallel parking space

C Front parking in a perpendicular parking space

Tapping the symbol – change parking mode

Parking manoeuvre

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

1. Tap *Start* on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Monitor your surroundings and follow the instructions on the Infotainment system display.

ⓘ The parking manoeuvre can be interrupted at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. After releasing the brake pedal, the parking manoeuvre will resume.

Terminating the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

- By pressing the P PARK button on the centre console
- By tapping the ✕ symbol on the Infotainment system screen
- By intervening in the steering
- By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

Automatic parking without searching for a parking space first

Forward parking:

1. Pull partially forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console or P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Rear parking:

1. Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console or P on the Infotainment system display.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Leaving a parallel parking space

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console or P on the Infotainment system display.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Restrictions

In some countries, the smart parking assistant is restricted for legal reasons.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to leave using the Park Assist. A relevant message will appear on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
- The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
- Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  - Obstacles are moving.
  - The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  - The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.
  - Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If wheels are replaced with dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Park assistant with memory function

Use

The assistant enables automatic parking of the car along a pre-saved route to an parking space with no roof and then leaving the parking space using Rear Traffic Alert.

ⓘ The assistant does not allow parking or leaving the parking space from a covered parking area due to the unavailability of the GPS signal.

Functionality

The parking assistant with memory function allows you to store in memory up to 5 parking spaces where you can park or drive away automatically repeatedly.

The system stores the location and name of the parking space in memory.

The system automatically controls the car's steering when parking in or out of the stored parking space.

The system displays information and instructions on the Infotainment system display.

If the system detects a risk of a collision, it activates emergency braking to minimise the consequences of the impact.

Operating conditions

- ASR does not intervene.
- GPS signal is available.
- The driver does not interfere with automatic steering wheel rotation.
- No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

Switching on

1. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen.

When the system is on, the symbol P PARK in the button is illuminated.

Saving a parking spot

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
3. Press on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Park the vehicle.
5. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake and leave the ignition on.
6. Press *Save parking* on the infotainment system display.
7. Use the displayed keypad to name and save the parking spot.

Parking in a stored parking spot

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
3. Press on the Infotainment system screen.
4. When at a maximum distance of 50 m from the stored parking spot, drive at a speed of less than 45 km/h towards the parking spot.
5. When the system detects the route to the stored parking space, press *Start* on the infotainment screen.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding message will be displayed and an acoustic signal will sound.

Saving the parking out manoeuvre from a stored parking spot

Saving the manoeuvre is only possible if the vehicle is standing in the same parking space that was last stored.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console
3. Press on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Select the stored space from which you want to teach the car to park out.
5. Please press the brake pedal and press *Parking* on the infotainment system screen.
6. Drive out of the space manually.
7. Press *Done* button or continue driving, the parking spot will be stored automatically.

Leaving a stored parking spot

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Press the P PARK button on the centre console

3. Press P on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Select a saved location from which you would like to park.
5. Press *Start* on the infotainment system display.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Storing the parking space after switching off the ignition

1. Park the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
2. Press *Save teached parking* on the infotainment system display.
3. Use the displayed keypad to name and save the parking spot.

Interrupting the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

- By pressing the P PARK button on the centre console
- By intervening in the steering
- By depressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 seconds.

ⓘ The parking manoeuvre can be interrupted at any time by depressing the brake pedal for less than 10 seconds. After releasing the brake pedal, the parking manoeuvre will resume.

Restrictions

In some countries, Park Assist with memory function is not available for legislative reasons.

If parking is not possible using the memory function of Park Assist, a message will appear on the Infotainment system display.

Do not use Park Assist in the following cases:

- GPS signal is not available.
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
- The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
- Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  - Obstacles are moving.
  - The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  - The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.
  - Obstacles higher than 20 cm may cause interruption of the manoeuvre.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Remotely controlled parking

Functionality

The function allows you to park or park out your car using MyŠkoda application on a compatible mobile phone.

The movement of the car is controlled by holding P in MyŠkoda application.

You can interrupt the movement of the car at any time by releasing P and resume by holding P.

The manoeuvre is also interrupted if the car detects an obstacle or runs over a large bump.

If the system detects a risk of a collision during the parking manoeuvre, it activates emergency braking to avoid impact or to minimise its consequences.

Parking with Smart parking assistant

This function enables the following operations:

- Parking in a transverse or longitudinal parking space.
- Parking out from a transverse parking space.
- Adjusting the car for safe exit from a longitudinal parking space.

Parking with smart parking assistant with memory function

This function allows you to park in a pre-stored parking space.

ⓘ The assistant does not allow parking in a sheltered parking space due to the unavailability of the GPS signal.

Operating conditions

- The mobile phone is fully functional and compatible.
- MyŠkoda application is installed on the mobile phone.
- Your mobile phone is paired and connected via Bluetooth® with the vehicle **» page 166**.
- The driver carries the vehicle key or digital key and remains in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle (no vehicle key may be left in the vehicle).
- GPS signal is available *(applies to parking by means of Park Assist with memory function)* .

Operation

Pairing and connecting your phone to the car

To use the remote parking function, you must pair and connect your phone to the vehicle via Bluetooth®.

This does not include pairing and connecting to the Infotainment system to use phone services or streaming audio.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Connection* > *Connect applications on the smartphone to the vehicle* > *Create a new connection*.
3. Scan QR-code displayed on the infotainment system screen.
4. Wait for establishing a connection or confirm the displayed messages.

Parking

1. Select the desired parking space.
2. Press on the Infotainment system screen
3. Wait for the prompt to leave the car.
4. Get out of the vehicle, keep the key or digital key on you.
5. Check the area around the car and the parking space.
6. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda and confirm any messages.
7. Hold down START ENGINE STOP for a long time.
8. Hold , the car will start and park.

You can interrupt the movement of the car at any time by releasing and resume by holding .

After parking, the engine is automatically switched off, the parking brake is applied and the car is locked.

The mobile phone screen will show a message indicating that the parking manoeuvre has been completed and any additional information.

Parking out from a transverse parking space

1. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda and confirm any messages.
2. Hold START ENGINE STOP to switch on the ignition.
3. Check the area around the car.
4. In MyŠkoda, select the desired exit direction of parking out by pressing ↓ or ↑.
5. Hold , the car will start and park out.

The mobile phone screen will show a message indicating that the parking manoeuvre has been completed and any additional information.

Parking out from a longitudinal parking space

1. Open the parking menu in MyŠkoda and confirm any messages.
2. Hold START ENGINE STOP to switch on the ignition.
3. Check the area around the car.
4. In MyŠkoda, select the desired exit direction of parking out by pressing ↰ or ↱.
5. Hold , the car will move slightly and set the front wheels in position for safe exit.

Restrictions

When using the function, the user is obliged to comply with the generally applicable legislation in force in the country in question, whereby the use of Remotely controlled parking may not be permitted in some countries. This is particularly the case in the event of a violation of the law in terms of the mandatory presence of the driver in the car and the obligation to fully dedicate oneself to driving.

In most countries, the person using the function is still considered to be the driver and road user. This person is responsible for the operation of the car as long as the Remotely controlled parking function is used.

Do not use Remotely controlled parking on the following cases:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- If snow chains or a temporary wheel are fitted on the vehicle.

- If the system offers to park in an inappropriate parking space.
- The angle of approach to the parking space is too large.
- Obstacles may not be correctly detected by the system:
  - Obstacles are moving.
  - The surface of the obstacles does not reflect sensor signals, e.g. textiles, foam materials, thin films.
  - The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a narrow pillar.

Troubleshooting

Interrupting the connection between the phone and the car

The connection between the phone and the car can be interrupted in the following cases, for example:

- An incoming phone call
- Long distance between the phone and the car
- Bluetooth® signal interference

When the connection is interrupted, follow the instructions on the mobile phone display.

High-voltage system

High-voltage system and battery

What you should be mindful of

High-voltage warning labels





Warning labels are placed on components with high electrical voltages.

⚠ DANGER

Improper handling of the high-voltage system and battery can cause fatal electric shock, burns, or injury.

- Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and the high-voltage system is energized. This applies even when the electric drive is switched off and the ignition is switched off.
- Do not touch or handle the components of the high-voltage system. These include, for example, the high-voltage cables and the high-voltage battery.
- Do not carry out any work on the high-voltage system and battery.
- Only qualified service technicians may work on the high-voltage system and systems affected by it.
- Do not open or repair components of the high-voltage system.
- Do not modify, disassemble or disconnect orange high-voltage cables.
- Do not open, modify or disassemble the high-voltage battery cover.
- Damage to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery may result in the release of toxic and flammable gases. Open the windows to vent escaping gases and leave the vehicle.
- Avoid contact with liquids and gases escaping from the high-voltage battery.
- In case of fire, leave the vehicle and keep a safe distance. Inform the emergency services that the vehicle has a high-voltage battery » *page 40, After an accident*.

⚠ CAUTION

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if the chassis is struck on the road or in an accident, for example.

- Have the high-voltage battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time with a discharged high-voltage battery, the high-voltage battery may be irreversibly damaged.

- A discharged high-voltage battery must be charged immediately!

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is left off the road for several months, the high-voltage battery may self-discharge.
This can lead to damage to the high-voltage battery at high ambient temperatures and low state of charge.

- Always ensure a sufficient state of charge of the high-voltage battery!

Overview

The high-voltage system in the vehicle consists of the following main components:

- High-voltage battery
- DC/DC converter
- Power electronics
- Electric motor
- High-voltage air conditioning compressor
- High-voltage battery charger
- Charging socket
- Orange high-voltage cables and connectors
- High-voltage heater

⚿ The high-voltage battery is located under the floor of the vehicle and is not accessible to the user.

Troubleshooting

High temperature of the high-voltage battery – fire hazard!


illuminates together with ⚠
Fire hazard report, continuous acoustic warning

1. Stop the car immediately, taking into account the current traffic situation!
2. Park the vehicle in a safe place, preferably in an open area, well away from buildings, other vehicles and flammable objects.
3. Secure the car with the electric parking brake.
4. Switch off the ignition.
5. Keep the vehicle key in a visible place, e.g. on the centre console, for the emergency services.
6. Exit the vehicle and make sure that no persons or animals are left in the vehicle.
7. Move away with the passengers to a safe distance from the car and the road, e.g. behind a guardrail.
8. Report the accident immediately to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
9. Do not try to fix the problem yourself!

If there is a risk of fire, the car will sound a horn and turn on the warning lights.

At the same time, the system can take one of the following measures:

- The door or trunk lid unlocks.
- Charging is terminated.
- The windows or the sliding roof will close.
- The locked window control buttons are unlocked.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!
In case of fire, poisonous and inflammable gases may be released. Components of the high-voltage system may be live.

- Leave the vehicle and stay well away from it.

The continuous acoustic warning can only be deactivated by a specialist garage. We recommend that you have it deactivated by a Škoda service partner.

Electric drive system fault


illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.


illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Low charge level of the high-voltage battery


illuminated
Low range message

1. Charge the high-voltage battery.

Discharged high-voltage battery


illuminated
No remaining range message
Risk of damage to the high-voltage battery.

1. Start charging immediately.

Range cannot be calculated


illuminated

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Overheated electrical system


Message indicating overheating of the electrical system

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
2. Do not top up the coolant!

3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging time is extended

When charging only with direct current (DC) and with intensive use of the vehicle, the charging current can be automatically reduced. The vehicle system thus protects the high-voltage battery from wear.

High-voltage battery state of health

Functionality

The high-voltage battery is subject to natural physical and chemical aging and wear. Proper handling contributes to the long-term maintenance of capacity, respectively range.

To display the health status of the high-voltage battery on the infotainment system, press > > > *Service* > *Vehicle Data*.

The state value of the high-voltage battery in % is the ratio of the current total usable capacity to the original total usable capacity.

The data in km indicates the distance the car has driven since the last update. An update is necessary to determine the current status value of the high-voltage battery.

The displayed value for the state of health of the high-voltage battery is only a guide and may vary depending on variable conditions such as the outside temperature or the duration of the measurement. Only the value measured by the Škoda service partner is decisive for the assessment of the legitimacy of the claim resulting from the Škoda warranty regarding the excessive reduction of the capacity of the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ We recommend that you update at least every 10 000 km or every 6 months.

Self-help

High-voltage battery charge status update conditions

- Outside temperature is not colder than 0 °C.
- The charge level is between 3-10%.

High-voltage battery status update

1. Leave the vehicle parked at a charging station depending on the outside temperature:
   - 0–10°C: min. 4 h
   - 10–25°C: min. 2 h
   - 25°C and more: min. 1 h
2. Connect the vehicle to the charging station.
3. Charge the high-voltage battery to 100 %.
4. Disconnect the vehicle from the charging station.
5. Leave the vehicle parked depending on the outside temperature:
   - 0–10°C: min. 2 h
   - 10–25°C: min. 1 h
   - 25°C and more: min. 30 min.

If the update is successful, the data in km will be reset.

High-voltage battery calibration

Use

The following applies to a vehicle with a LFP high-voltage battery.

The charge status indicator may become inaccurate due to the physical properties of the high-voltage battery.

The calibration ensures the correct display of the charge status of the high-voltage battery.

The calibration will take place automatically when the following conditions are met:

- Charge the high-voltage battery regularly to 100%, e.g. every two weeks.
- After charging, leave the vehicle parked for an extended period, e.g., overnight.

Activation of automatic calibration of high-voltage battery

This function is available depending on the vehicle equipment.

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system > > > •••.
2. Verify that the menu item for automatic calibration is available.
3. If so, activate the function.

If it is necessary to leave the vehicle parked after charging, a corresponding text message is displayed in the main charging menu.

Operation

High-voltage battery calibration

The following applies to a vehicle with a LFP high-voltage battery.

If the calibration has not taken place for a long time, the system will prompt the vehicle to perform the calibration on the » page 89 logout screen.

Calibrate as soon as possible.

The state of charge of the high-voltage battery must be less than 70% before calibration.

Use alternating current (AC) charging for successful calibration.

1. Activate the calibration of the high-voltage battery in the infotainment on the logout screen.

   The vehicle system automatically selects the instant charging mode and sets the upper charge level of the high-voltage battery to 100%.
2. Switch off comfort consumers, e.g. air conditioning system.
3. Connect the vehicle to the charging station.

   When charging starts, the calibration starts automatically.
4. Charge the high-voltage battery to 100 %.
5. Check that a message is displayed in the > > main charging menu that the vehicle needs to be parked for a longer time after charging.

   If so, leave the vehicle parked for an extended period, e.g. overnight.

When charging with direct current (DC), the charging power may be reduced during calibration.

If the calibration process is interrupted, it will be restarted automatically the next time the battery is charged.

System-induced calibration of high-voltage battery

If the system evaluates the deviation of the charge state as critical, the calibration is automatically activated. *Battery calibration active* is displayed on the » page 89 logout screen.

Perform the calibration process immediately.

Other charging modes, e.g. charging to departure time, cannot be selected until the calibration process is successfully completed.

If the calibration process was successful, the charging settings selected before the calibration, e.g. the upper charge limit, are restored.

⚠ WARNING

Delaying the calibration can lead to incorrect range calculation and route planning based on navigation. A risk of the car stopping in traffic.

- Successfully perform the calibration process as soon as possible.

Range

What affects the range

The range depends mainly on the driving style and the selected driving mode. It is therefore recommended not to drive too fast and not to accelerate too rapidly » page 132.

It also depends on the climatic conditions and on the way the comfort appliances are used, especially the air conditioning.

Therefore it is recommended that, especially in cold weather, the vehicle is parked in a garage or the interior temperature of the vehicle is raised in one of the following ways before driving to reduce the consumption of comfort appliances at the start of the journey:

- Set up delayed charging with interior preheating » page 180.
- Set the interior to preheat with independent air conditioning if the vehicle cannot be connected to the mains » page 83.

If the car is new, the range estimate is inaccurate. It is necessary to drive approximately 500 km with your usual driving style. This gives the car enough information to calculate a more accurate range estimate.

Plan your journey wisely. Use the range calculator on the Škoda website.

After you enter your destination in the navigation system, the range value is recalculated based on the selected route data.

https://go.skoda.eu/range-calculator

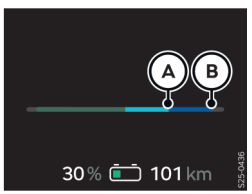
Driving performance availability

Overview

Indicator

The available driving performance indicator informs the driver of the current status of the vehicle's electric drive while driving. This is important for a correct assessment of the traffic situation, e.g. whether there is enough driving performance available for overtaking.

The regenerative braking progress indicator is shown on the instrument cluster screen.



Ⓐ Currently used driving performance
Ⓑ Currently available driving performance

If the currently available power performance Ⓑ is not limited by anything, it is shown in full on the display. If there are limitations, the display range is reduced accordingly.

For example, the following factors reduce the availability of driving power performance Ⓑ:

- Very high temperature of the high-voltage battery
- Very low temperature of the high voltage battery
- Low charge level of the high-voltage battery

⚠ WARNING

Danger of accident due to the limitation of maximum speed and acceleration!

- Always adapt your driving style to the currently available driving performance.

When you press the accelerator pedal hard, the vehicle system locks in the current value of available driving performance Ⓑ for a limited period of time, e.g. for an overtaking manoeuvre. After this time or when the accelerator pedal is released, the driving performance will be available again according to the current conditions.

Troubleshooting

Insufficient driving performance when the high-voltage battery i low


illuminated
Message of insufficient driving performance, warning tone

A risk of the car stopping in traffic.

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 7 km/h.

Convenience functions, such as air conditioning, are limited.

1. Drive with extra care to the nearest charging station or park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Limited driving performance when the high-voltage battery i low


illuminated
Message of limited driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 130 km/h.

1. Charge the high-voltage battery.

If you do not charge the high-voltage battery, the driving performance will further decrease and will be insufficient to operate the car.

Insufficient driving performance when the temperature of the high-voltage battery i very low


illuminated
Message of insufficient driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 7 km/h.

Convenience functions, such as air conditioning, are limited.

Driving performance will increase after the high voltage battery is warmed up. You can heat the high-voltage battery in one of the following ways:

1. Connect the car to the charging station for about 10 minutes.
2. Turn on the ignition.

Or:

1. If the traffic situation allows, drive for approximately 10 minutes.
2. Stop the car, turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

After this, proceed as follows:

- If indicator light goes out, the high-voltage battery is sufficiently heated.
- If indicator light is still on, repeat the procedure for heating the high-voltage battery.

If departure is planned in cold weather conditions, we recommend preheating the interior using independent air conditioning.

Limited driving performance when the temperature of the high-voltage battery i very low


illuminated
Message of limited driving performance, warning tone

Driving speed is limited to a maximum of 130 km/h.

1. Continue driving to allow the high voltage battery to warm up.

Charging

General information on charging

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!

- Follow the correct charging procedure. Do not disconnect the charging cable during charging.
- When operating a charging station, follow the instructions provided on the charging station.
- Never charge in places where there is a risk of explosion. Components of the charging cable can cause sparks and thus ignite explosive fumes.
- Only charge from professionally installed and undamaged electrical sockets in a faultless wiring system. Have the electrical sockets and wiring checked regularly.
- Connect the charging cable to an electrical outlet that is protected from moisture and liquids.
- Do not use the charging cable together with an extension cord, multiple mains socket, adapter or timer.
- Do not use damaged charging cables.
- Protect the connectors of charging cables and power sockets from moisture and liquids.
- Do not work on the vehicle while it is being charged.
- Always disconnect the charging cable before switching on the ignition. Replace the protective cap and close the vehicle's charging socket cover.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fire and damage to the vehicle!

- Do not charge several vehicles at the same time from one socket circuit.
- Ensure that the maximum power load capacity of the socket circuit is observed. If other appliances draw power from the same socket circuit while charging, the socket circuit may be overloaded and the charging process may be terminated.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of irreversible damage to the high voltage battery!

- If you do not use the vehicle for an extended period of time, charge the high-voltage battery after four months at the latest.

The first charging and charging after a long period of idling

If the high-voltage battery is new or has not been charged for a long time, the maximum state of charge can only be reached after repeated charging. This is not a fault.

Recommended charging instructions

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to follow these recommendations will result in increased ageing and wear of the high-voltage battery.

The high-voltage battery is subject to natural ageing and wear during use. Proper handling helps to maintain capacity and life over the long term. It is therefore recommended to observe the following instructions:

- Use the Battery Care Mode function *(applies to a vehicle with a NMC high-voltage battery)* .
- Only charge the high-voltage battery to 100 % before a long journey. To do this, use delayed charging (charging for the departure time). Drive off as soon as possible after fully charging *(applies to vehicles with NMC high-voltage battery)* .
- Avoid parking the vehicle for long periods with a high state of charge of the high-voltage battery *(applies to vehicles with NMC high-voltage battery)* .
- If the vehicle will be parked for a long period of time, leave the high-voltage battery charged in the range from 40 to 70 %.

- Avoid completely discharging the high-voltage battery, e.g. due to long periods of leaving the vehicle idle with a low state of charge. Set the lower battery charge limit to at least 20 %.
- Charge the high-voltage battery mainly with alternating current (AC).

  When fast charging with direct current (DC), the charging power is very high. Frequent fast charging (DC) can permanently reduce the capacity of a high-voltage battery.
- If possible, avoid leaving the vehicle in high outside temperatures for long periods, especially in direct sunlight.

If the charge level of the high-voltage battery is low after the ride, we recommend starting charging immediately after the ride.

During charging, functions that reduce the charging rate, such as air conditioning or seat heating, may be unavailable or limited.

Overview

Charging options

- Public charging station – alternating current (AC) » page 177
- Public fast charging station – direct current (DC) » page 178
- Charging station – alternating current (AC) (Wallbox) » page 177
- Mains sockets – alternating current (AC) » page 177

Charging from a charging station (Wallbox) results in higher charging power and shorter charging times than charging from a mains socket.

For information on charging options, refer to the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/home-charging

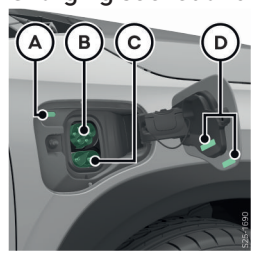
For information on how to purchase a suitable Wallbox charging station, contact your Škoda partner.

NOTICE

The installation of a Wallbox charging station must be carried out by a qualified technician.

- Before installing a charging station (Wallbox), have your wiring checked.
- Have the wiring and the charging station (Wallbox) checked regularly by a qualified technician.

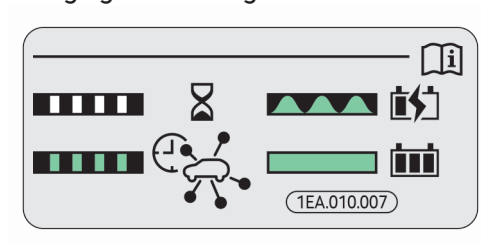
Charging socket and indicator light



- Ⓐ Charging indicator light
- Ⓑ Charging socket (AC)
- Ⓒ Charging socket (DC)
- Ⓓ Labels:
  - Charging indicator light label
  - Charging compatibility information label » page 177

The indicator light is also used to illuminate the charging socket. It is illuminated white, e.g. when the vehicle is unlocked or parked and the charging socket housing is opened.

Charging indicator light label



- The connector has been plugged into the charging socket and the connection between the vehicle and the charging point is being established.
  Indicator light flashes in white.
- Postponed charging activated, charging has not yet started.
  Indicator light flashes in green.
- The high-voltage battery is charging.
  Indicator light pulses in green.
- High-voltage battery is charged, charging has been terminated.
  Indicator light is green.

The charging indicator light may also indicate charging problems » page 176.

Restrictions

The charging time is affected by the following factors:

- Climatic conditions

- High-voltage battery temperature
- High-voltage battery charge status
- Charging power supplied by the charging station or an electrical outlet

Due to the physical characteristics of the high-voltage battery, its ability to store energy changes and the charging slows down in the following cases:

- During prolonged parking in very cold climatic conditions
- As the level of charging increases

Troubleshooting

Problems signalled by the indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket

 illuminated

1. Unplug the connector and reinsert it into the charging socket as far as it goes.
2. If the problem persists, check the following:
   - The charging station or cable is connected to the mains and does not indicate any warnings or error messages.
   - You are properly authorized if the charging station requires it.
   - The cable is connected and properly secured in the charging socket.
   - The vehicle does not indicate any error messages related to the high-voltage system.
3. If these are correct and the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.



pulses green three times and then red once
At the same time,  lights up on the instrument panel.
The connector in the charging socket is not secured and the vehicle is recharged with a significantly lower charging current.

1. Reinsert the plug into the charging socket as far as it will go.
2. If the problem persists, use a different charging cable or charging station.
3. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging does not start or is interrupted

A message is displayed stating that charging is not possible.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it.

   Or:

   Use another charging option.
2. If charging does not start or is interrupted again seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging time is extended

If the high-voltage battery is too hot after driving, the system can reduce the charging current during subsequent charging to protect the high-voltage battery from overheating. This will increase the charging time.

1. Make sure that the charging current (AC) is not set to a reduced level in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 180, or in the charging device (Wallbox, universal charging cable).
2. Make sure that the indicator light in the charging socket does not indicate a fault.

DC fast charging is not possible

A message is displayed stating that fast charging is not possible.

1. Charge the high-voltage battery with AC current.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging is terminated unexpectedly

1. Check the charging status on the main charging settings screen in the Infotainment system » page 180, to see if the set upper charge limit has already been reached.
2. In the event of an error message, check the charging station or try another charging station.

The connector cannot be detached

A message on the overheated connector will appear on the instrument cluster screen.

1. Wait for the connector to cool down.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

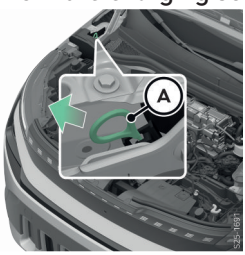
Or:

The locking system of the charging socket has failed.

1. Release the connector using the mechanical release » page 177, Self-help.

Self-help

Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket



If the connector remains locked in the charging socket after charging has been completed and the button has been pressed, proceed as follows:

1. Pull carefully on Ⓐ eyelet.
2. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.
3. Have the vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

Information labels

The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



Designation of the AC charging connector type

A A label on the vehicle and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the vehicle

B A label on the charging station and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the charging station (if the cable is not part of the charging station)



Designation of the type of DC charging connector on the vehicle and on the charging cable connector

A Voltage up to 500V

B Voltage up to 920V

High-voltage battery capacity

With respect to the technology used, the nominal (gross) capacity of the high-voltage battery is always higher than the total usable (net) capacity.

Charging with alternating current(AC)

Operation

Charging with alternating current (AC):

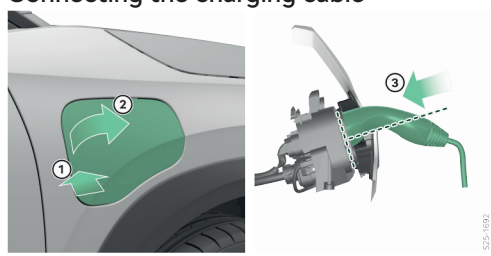
- Charging station (Wallbox)
- Public charging stations
- Charging sockets

Before charging

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Switch off the ignition.

   Switched on ignition can increase the charging time.
3. If you are not charging from a charging station with an integrated charging cable, connect the charging cable to the socket of the charging device or to the mains socket.
4. Fully unwind the charging cable.

Connecting the charging cable



1. Unlock the car and push on the charging socket cover.
2. Open the charging socket cover.

   The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.
3. Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.
4. Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted straight and all the way in.

   The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The display in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Interrupting charging and restarting charging

1. Press the button for terminating charging immediately in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 180.

   Charging is interrupted. The connector remains secured in the charging socket.
2. To restart charging, tap the instant start button in the Infotainment system » page 180.

Automatic termination of charging process and plug release

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically.

If you set the automatic plug release, the plug is unlocked after the charging process is complete and remains unlocked » page 180.

If the plug does not unlock, this is due to the power supply of switched-on consumers when the ignition is switched on, e.g. the air-conditioning system.

Press the button on the key to unlock the locked connector.

Manual termination of charging

1. Press the button on the SmartKey or press the central locking button on the centre console.

   Charging is interrupted, the connector is unlocked for 45 seconds and can be removed.

   After 45 seconds, the connector will re-lock and if the upper battery charge limit has not been reached, charging will continue.

Or:

1. Follow the instructions on the charging station.

   The plug remains locked in the charging socket and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key or the central locking button on the centre console.

After charging

1. If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.
2. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.
3. Close the charging socket cover.
4. Alternatively, remove the charging cable from the charging device or from the power socket.

If you leave the charging cable connected to the mains after charging, the appliances in the car do not discharge the high-voltage battery, but are powered from the mains.

Charging with direct current (DC)

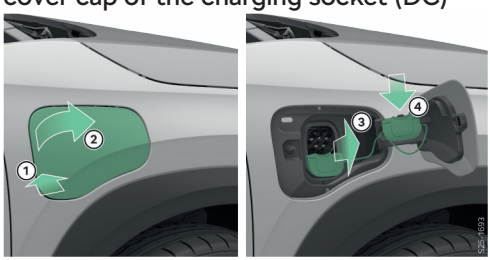
Operation

Options of charging with direct current (DC):

- Public charging stations
- A charging station (Wallbox) allowing charging with direct current (DC)

When charging, a higher charging power is achieved and the charging time is significantly reduced.

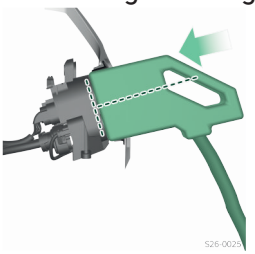
Opening the cover and removing the cover cap of the charging socket (DC)



1. Unlock the car and push on the charging socket cover.
2. Open the charging socket cover.

   The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.
3. Remove the lower cover cap of the charging socket (DC).
4. Replace the lower charging socket (DC) cover cap on the charging socket cover.

Connecting the charging cable



1. Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.
2. Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted all the way in.

   The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The display in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Charging automatically stops

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically. The connector is unlocked in the socket and can be removed.

Manual termination of charging

1. Follow the instructions of the station.

   When charging is complete, the connector will be automatically released. The indicator light in the charging socket lights green.

Or:

1. Press the button for terminating charging in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 180.

   Charging will be terminated. The connector will automatically unlock in the socket.

   To start charging again, you must remove the connector and then start the charging process from the beginning.

After charging

1. If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.
2. Pull the connector out of the charging socket.
3. Replace the charging socket cap.
4. Close the charging socket cover.

Charging set-up

Functionality

Tools for setting up charging

Use the following tools to set, for example, the delayed charging (to be completed by departure time) or the upper charge limit of the high-voltage battery:

- Charging set-up in the Infotainment system » page 180, Overview
- MyŠkoda application » page 120, Functionality

Information on the delayed charging setting

The following information applies only to alternating current (AC) charging.

Functionality depends on the compatible infrastructure and its settings.

If charging is set before the time of departure, charging will start so that it is completed at the set departure time. When charging at preferred times is set, charging takes place preferentially in this time range.

If, after connecting the vehicle to the charging device, the charge level is lower than the set lower charge limit, charging will start immediately at the set lower limit regardless of the delayed charging.

When the time of departure is too early to fully complete charging, the high-voltage battery will not be charged to the desired level at the time of departure. The charging rate depends on the infrastructure used and its settings.

If you need to leave earlier than at the set time of departure:

1. Change the departure time.

   Or:

   Start charging immediately.
2. Check that the vehicle has started charging.

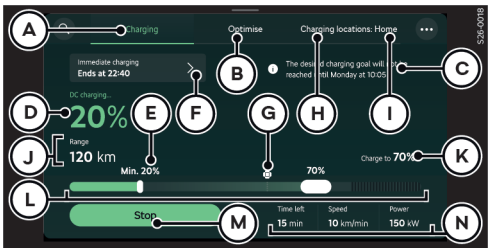
Conditions for starting delayed charging

- The vehicle is connected to a charging device that allows delayed charging.
- Delayed charging is activated in the charging settings » page 180, Overview.
- The (Wallbox) charging station is saved as the » page 180 charging point.

Overview

Displaying the main charging menu

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.



Ⓐ Charging screen with presets and information

Ⓑ Charging optimisation

Ⓒ General information on charging

Ⓓ State of charge

Ⓔ Lower charge limit

Ⓕ Charging mode options (the range depends on the selected charging point)

- Instant charging
- Charging for the time of departure
- Charging and air conditioning for the time of departure
- Charging at preferred times
- Bidirectional charging

Ⓖ Power consumption indicator during scheduled journey using navigation

Ⓗ View a selection of charging points » *page 180*

Ⓘ Selected charging point

Ⓙ Range

Ⓚ Upper charge limit

Ⓛ Charge status indicator

Ⓜ Pause charging/Resume paused charging

Ⓝ Current charging speed

Settings

Charging optimisation

The function is used to preheat the high-voltage battery to the optimal temperature for direct current (DC) charging.

1. On the infotainment screen, press > > > *Optimization*.

ⓘ You can use this function especially when charging the vehicle in cold weather conditions.

Setting up the charging points

In the following menu you can add and set up charging points.

The system performs the addition of a new charging point based on the current GPS position of the vehicle.

Therefore, when adding a new charging point, it is necessary to allow the app access to location data.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. On the infotainment screen, press > > > *Charging locations*.
3. Select a charging point and one of the charging point preferences.

   You can set or enable the following items from the displayed preset:

   - Departure time
   - Day/days of the week
   - Repeat on the selected day/days of the week
   - Reduced charging current
   - Setting the lower charge limit

     Charging starts immediately if the charge level falls below the set value.
   - Setting the upper charge limit
   - Preferred charging times
   - Automatic release of the charging cable connector
4. Activate or deactivate the selected preset.

ⓘ If you do not allow access to location data, it will be necessary to allow access in the » *page 89* app settings to further add a charging point.

ⓘ Settings saved at the charging point take precedence over settings in the main charging menu » *page 180*.

ⓘ If you want to rename or delete the charging point, hold your finger on it and select the desired one.

Other charging settings

1. Tap > > > ••• in the Infotainment system.

   You can enable or disable the following functions from the displayed preset:

   - Battery Care Mode *(applies to a vehicle with a NMC high-voltage battery)*

- Automatic calibration of a high-voltage battery *(applies to a vehicle with a LFP high-voltage battery)* » page 170
- Vehicle-to-Load
- Reducing AC charging current *(applies to unsaved charging points)*
- Automatic unlocking of the AC charging cable connector *(applies to unsaved charging points)*
- Plug & Charge
- Setting automatic stops for charging
- Optimisation of fast charging during active route guidance

Battery Care Mode

The following applies to a vehicle with a NMC high-voltage battery.

The Battery Care Mode function helps to extend the life of the high-voltage battery by automatically setting the upper charge limit depending on the high-voltage battery temperature.

You can increase the upper charge limit on a one-time basis (e.g. before a longer trip).

If delayed charging is set, Battery Care Mode will not lower the upper charge limit, but it will charge the high-voltage battery to the value set for the departure time.

Vehicle-to-Load

The Vehicle-to-Load function enables the power supply of electrical devices via V2L adapter from charging socket (AC).

For further details, see » page 213, Overview.

The amount of electricity consumed from the high-voltage battery of the vehicle is converted into a virtual distance according to the usual consumption of the vehicle when driving. The total value is the sum of the virtual distance and the actual distance driven.

To display on the infotainment system, press > > > Service > Vehicle Data.

Operating conditions:

- The function is activated.
- The state of charge of the high-voltage battery is greater than 20 %.

Plug & Charge

The Plug & Charge function allows user authorisation at the charging station without the need for additional accessories (e.g. RFID card/chip or mobile application).

The user authorisation takes place automatically when the charging cable is connected to the vehicle. The cost will be charged to the charging contract (e.g. Powerpass), that the user has selected in MyŠkoda application.

Operating conditions:

- The charging station supports the Plug & Charge function.
- The activation of a valid Plug & Charge contract for your vehicle is confirmed in MyŠkoda application.
- Škoda Connect services » page 119 are switched on in the infotainment system.
- The Plug & Charge application is activated in Infotainment.

If the Plug & Charge authorisation does not take place, proceed as follows:

1. Deactivate the function in the Infotainment system.
2. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it again after a while.
3. Authorise yourself at the charging station in another way.

More information on Plug & Charge can be found on the Škoda website.

https://go.skoda.eu/plug-and-charge

Bidirectional charging

Use

The bidirectional charging function allows you to:

- Store electrical power in the car's high-voltage battery
- Take electrical power from the car's high-voltage battery, e.g. to a home battery storage

Conditions

- The charging station (Wallbox) allows charging with direct current (DC).
- The charging station (Wallbox) supports the bidirectional charging function, is approved for this function by Škoda Auto a.s. and is compatible with the vehicle.

- The (Wallbox) charging station is saved as the » page 180 charging point.

Settings

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. In the menu of charging modes, select the bidirectional charging mode.

The bidirectional charging function is set by default in the charge range of 20–80 %.
If the state of charge is below 20%, the bidirectional charging function will only allow charging.
If you connect the vehicle to a charging station (Wallbox) and the state of charge of the vehicle is below the set lower charge limit, the vehicle will immediately start charging until it reaches the lower charge limit.
To ensure sufficient electrical energy when using the bidirectional charging function, we recommend setting the lower charge limit to a higher value than the standard 20% » page 180.

If the state of charge of the car is higher than 80%, the bidirectional charging function will only allow discharging.

To charge the vehicle to more than 80%, the bidirectional charging function must be switched to immediate charging mode.

Some charging stations (Wallbox) automatically switch to immediate charging mode.

When using bidirectional charging, the departure preset can only be set in the charging station (Wallbox).

The amount of electricity consumed is converted into a virtual distance according to the usual consumption of the car when driving. The total value is the sum of the virtual distance and the actual distance driven.

To display on the infotainment system, press > > > *Service* > *Vehicle Data*.

Charging cables

General information on charging cables

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by Škoda Auto. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

- Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Instructions for handling the charging cable

- Protect the components of the charging cable from undue stress such as being run over, dropped, pulled, broken or bent over sharp edges.
- When unplugging from the power outlet or charging device, do not pull on the cable, but only on the connector.
- Put on the protective caps after using the charging cable.
- Keep the components of the charging cable away from intense sunlight (external temperature must not exceed 50 °C).
- Do not immerse the charging cable components in water or expose them to snow or ice.

Before travelling abroad

In some countries there may be the following differences in the power grid:

- Different types of mains sockets.
- Different precautions in the event of a fault
- Different measures for protection against electric shock, e.g. earthed/ungrounded mains

ⓘ In countries with an ungrounded power grid, the universal charging cable allows deactivation or activation of the protective wire monitoring » page 186.

Check that your charging cable is suitable for charging in the relevant country. If you are unsure about connectors and sockets, we recommend contacting your Škoda service partner.

Overview

Types of charging cables

- Charging cable (Mode 2) for standard charging sockets with AC » page 184
- Charging cable (Mode 3) for charging stations with AC » page 185
- Universal charging cable (Mode 2) for charging sockets with AC » page 185

Space for stowing the charging cables

- Space for stowing the charging cables » page 206
- Bag for stowing charging cables » page 214

Technical data and specifications

Information label on the charging cable connector

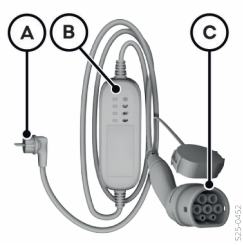
The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



C Designation of the AC charging connector type

Charging cable Mode 2

Overview



Ⓐ Connector for the mains supply
Ⓑ Control box
Ⓒ Connector for the vehicle charging socket

The charging cable can be used for charging from a regular mains socket with AC.

Technical data is provided on the cable label. The values may vary depending on the type of cable.

Control box

The control box ensures that the charging cable connector is de-energised until it is plugged into the car's charging socket.

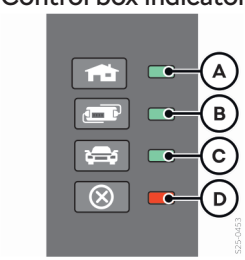
When the charging cable is plugged into the charging socket the control box automatically performs a self-test. In doing so, all the indicator lights will briefly light up.

Monitoring the temperature

The charging cable is equipped with a temperature monitor in the control box and on the mains connector.

The temperature monitor is activated if the charging cable becomes very hot. This can be caused, for example, by transport in an overheated luggage compartment or by strong sunlight.

Control box indicator light



Ⓐ Indicator light of the connector plugged into the mains socket
Ⓑ Control box indicator light
Ⓒ Vehicle indicator light
Ⓓ Warning light

The charging cable is prepared

illuminated

The charging cable **is connected** to the mains but **not connected** to the vehicle charging socket.

Charging is in progress

illuminated, flashes

The high-voltage battery is charging.

Charging was terminated

illuminated

The charging cable is connected to the mains and to the vehicle charging socket. Charging has been terminated.

Troubleshooting

Mains fault

flashing, ⊗ illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Use another standard mains socket.
2. Have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.
3. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Overheated charging cable

flashing, ⊗ illuminated

The charging current is reduced or charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and let it cool down.
2. Use another standard mains socket.
3. Have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.
4. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Or:

flashing, ⊗ illuminated

The charging current is reduced or charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and let it cool down.
2. Plug in again into a standard charging socket.
3. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Control box fault

flashing, ⊗ illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Vehicle fault

flashing, ⊗ illuminated/flashing

Charging is interrupted.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The control box can also evaluate the following situations as faults:

- A charger is connected to the 12V vehicle battery.
- The car is in close proximity to a high voltage line.
- The car is not standing on its wheels, but is lifted by a lifting device, for example.

Charging cable Mode 3

Overview



The charging cable can be used to charge your vehicle at public AC charging stations that do not have an integrated charging cable.

Technical data and specifications

Nominal power	20 A / 32 A
Mains voltage	250V (1-phase) / 480V (3-phase)
Mains frequency	50 Hz
Charging cable connector	type 2
Degree of protection	IP44
Cable weight	2.5 kg
Operating ambient temperature	–30 °C up to +50 °C
Operating humidity	max. 95 %

The data is provided in the instructions enclosed with the charging cable.

Universal charging cable Mode 2

Use

The universal charging cable can be used for charging from the following AC mains sockets:

- Standard charging socket
- Industrial socket

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by Škoda Auto. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

- Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.
- Do not use the charging cable with:
  - Extension cord
  - Cable drum
  - Multiple mains socket
  - Adapter
  - Timer switch

Warning symbols

Use the charging cable in a temperature range of -30 °C to +50 °C.

Use the charging cable up to a maximum of 4000 m above sea level.

The charging cable is equipped with a switched protective wire.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

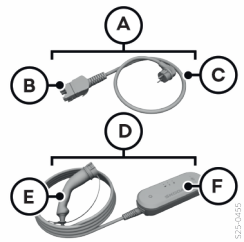
Do not use the charging cable together with extension and drum cables.

Do not use the charging cable together with multiple outlets.

There is a risk of electric shock if used incorrectly.

Observe the related operating instructions, especially the warning and safety instructions.

Overview



Ⓐ Replaceable power cable
Ⓑ Connector for connecting to the control box
Ⓒ Connector for the mains supply
Ⓓ Charging cable with control box
Ⓔ Connector for the vehicle charging socket
Ⓕ Control box

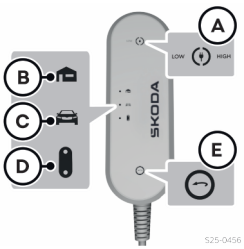
Connecting and disconnecting the replaceable power cable » page 187.

Control box

The control box ensures that the charging plug is de-energised until it is plugged into the car's charging socket.

When connecting the charging cable to the mains socket, all the indicator lights on the control box will briefly light up red.

When the charging cable is plugged into the vehicle charging socket, the control box automatically performs a self-test. In doing so, all the indicator lights will briefly light up and gradually go out.



Ⓐ On/Off button with indicator light and charging current limit function
Ⓑ Indicator light of the connector plugged into the mains socket
Ⓒ Vehicle indicator light
Ⓓ Control box indicator light
Ⓔ Reset button with indicator light

Control box indicator light

illuminated
The charging cable is connected to the mains and ready for charging

pulsating
The high-voltage battery is charging.

Fault indication » page 187.

Settings

The following functions can be set on the control box:

- Charging current limitation
- Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

Charging current limitation

Charging current limitation is used, for example, to prevent the charging cable from overheating.

1. Hold button pressed for at least 2 s.

   After the charging current value has been set, the indicator lights and flash.

   The set reduced value (LOW) is displayed to the left of the button.

   The set unreduced value (HIGH) is displayed to the right of the button.

ⓘ The universal charging cable is preset at the factory for a reduced charging current. The next time the cable is used, the last set value is used.

Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

In the case of an **ungrounded** electric network, a protective conductor error message is displayed, disable its monitoring as follows:

1. Hold down the and buttons, until the indicator light flashes six times.
2. After 1 second, hold the and buttons again until the indicator light flashes six times.

If the electric network is **grounded**, activate the protective conductor monitoring:

1. Hold down the and buttons, until the indicator light flashes six times.

   The and indicator lights go out and pulses.

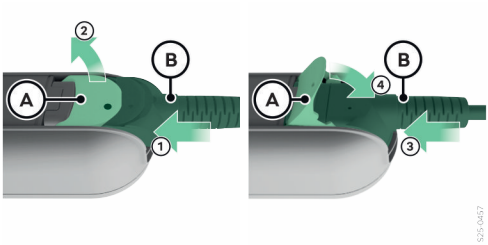
Connecting and disconnecting the replaceable power cable

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!
The following conditions must be met before handling the cables:

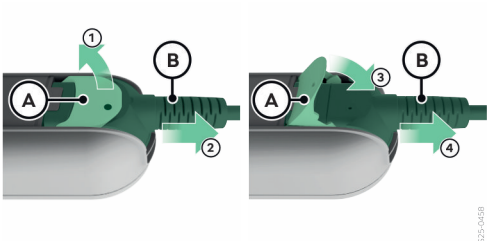
- Charging cable must be disconnected from the vehicle's charging socket.
- Replaceable power cable must be disconnected from the power socket

Plugging the replaceable power cable into the control box



1. Partially insert the (B) connector into the control box.
2. Remove the (A) cap.
3. Push the (B) connector all the way in.
4. Replace the (A) cap.

Disconnecting the replaceable power cable from the control box



1. Remove the (A) cap.
2. Partly pull the (B) connector out.
3. Replace the (A) cap.
4. Pull the (B) connector out completely.

Troubleshooting

Overheated charging cable

pulses, illuminated

The charging current will be limited. After cooling down, charging will continue without restriction.

1. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

This may be caused by connecting a multi-phase socket as a single-phase socket. It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Or:

illuminated, illuminated

The charging current will be limited.

1. Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and let it cool down.
2. Use another standard mains socket.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Unstable electric network

illuminated, flashing

Charging is interrupted. Once the power grid has stabilised, charging will resume.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Electric network overvoltage

illuminated, flashing

Charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Interrupted or missing protective conductor in the electric network

illuminated, flashing

1. If the electric network is grounded, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.
2. Have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.

Or:

1. If the power grid is not grounded, deactivate the protective wire monitoring » page 186.

Incorrectly connected electric network

illuminated, flashes

Charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Fault current detected by the control box

illuminated, illuminated, flashes

Charging is interrupted.

1. Press the button for several seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Overheated control box

pulses, illuminated

The charging current will be limited. After cooling down, the error is automatically rectified and charging continues.

1. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Or:

illuminated, illuminated

The control box is overheated, charging is interrupted. After cooling down, the error is automatically rectified and charging continues.

1. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Control box fault

illuminated, flashes or is illuminated

Or:

illuminated, illuminated, illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended to have the electric network checked by a professional technician.

Severe control box fault

flashing, illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Deactivated protective conductor monitoring

pulses, illuminated

1. If the power grid is grounded, activate the protective wire monitoring » page 186.

Vehicle charging system fault

illuminated, flashing

Charging is interrupted. After the vehicle charging system has stabilized, charging will resume.

1. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Or:

illuminated, illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Stop charging, disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging cable fault

illuminated, flashing

Charging is interrupted.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Indicator light indication fault

illuminated, illuminated

Or:

illuminated, illuminated

Charging is interrupted.

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

Charging cable with control box (without replaceable power cable)

Cable option (power)	7.2 kW	11 kW
Nominal power	32 A / 1phase	16 A / 3phase
Mains voltage	100–240 V	
Mains frequency	50 Hz / 60 Hz	
Overvoltage category (EN 60664)	II	
Built-in RCD	type A – AC 30 mA / DC 6 mA	
Connector for the vehicle charging socket	type 2	
Protection class	I	
Degree of protection	IP55	
Cable weight	3 kg	
Operating ambient temperature	–30 °C up to +50 °C	
Operating humidity	5 % – 95 %	
Operating altitude	max. 4000 m above sea level.	

Some technical data is provided on the charging cable label.

Replaceable power cable

The following technical data is provided on the cable:

- Mains voltage
- Nominal power
- Degree of protection

Space under the bonnet

The bonnet

Operation

Before opening

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!

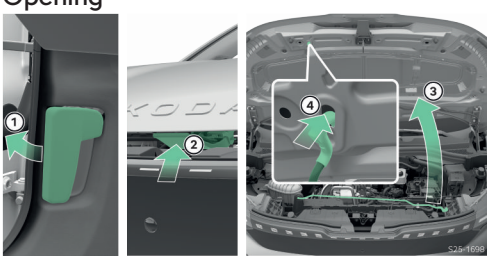
- Keep all persons well away from the area under the bonnet.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

- Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.

Opening



1. Pull the release lever underneath the dashboard.
2. Release the safety catch and lift the bonnet.
3. Remove the prop from its holder.
4. Insert the end of the strut into the hole in the bonnet.

Closing

1. Lift the bonnet.
2. Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
3. Fold the bonnet down and release it from a height of 20 cm.
4. Check that the bonnet is closed.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of deformation of the bonnet!

- Do not press down on an unsecured bonnet.
- Open and close the bonnet again.

Troubleshooting

Snow in the space under the bonnet

In cold climates, snow can accumulate in the area under the bonnet in certain conditions. The melted snow can then create a pool of water under the vehicle. This is not a fault.

Coolant

Regulations

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) coolant to top up.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine! Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

- Vehicle on a flat surface
- Ignition off

Checking the fill level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, top up the coolant.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the area under the bonnet!

- Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

- Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
- Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.

- Do not open the coolant filler cap immediately after stopping the vehicle and switching off the ignition.

1. Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
2. Refill with a coolant having the correct specification » *page 189*.
3. Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level too low


illuminated – coolant level too low

1. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct:

1. **Do not continue driving!**
2. **Seek assistance from a specialist garage.**

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

1. Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
2. Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

1. Have the coolant replaced by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

1. Top up the coolant and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery and fuses

12V vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

The 12V vehicle battery may only be disconnected and connected by a specialist garage.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to high-voltage system and high-voltage battery in case of unauthorised handling!

- Do not change, dismantle or disconnect the 12V vehicle battery.
- Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

NOTICE

The use of an unsuitable 12V car battery will invalidate the type approval.

- When replacing a 12V vehicle battery, it is necessary to use only a 12V vehicle battery designed for your vehicle. We recommend using a 12V vehicle battery from the range of Škoda Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols on the 12V vehicle battery

	Wear protective goggles!
	The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is highly caustic and may cause serious injury. Wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks and unprotected light sources away from the 12V battery! Do not smoke!
	A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when the 12V vehicle battery is charged!
	Keep children away from the 12V vehicle battery!
	Follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual!

Automatic system measures against discharge

- Switches off certain consumers or restricts their use of power

Possible causes of discharge

- Worn 12V vehicle battery
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

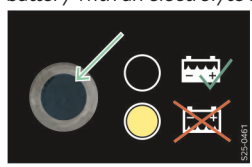
Checking and charging

Checking the condition

The specialist garage checks the condition of the 12V battery during servicing.

Checking the acid level

The following information applies to a 12V vehicle battery with an electrolyte level indicator.



1. Tap on the indicator before testing to clear air bubbles.

- Black – the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow – the acid is too low, the 12V vehicle battery must be replaced.

Charging

WARNING

Risk of explosion!

- Hydrogen is released during charging. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not “quick charge” a 12V vehicle battery yourself, have it done by a specialist garage.

The 12V vehicle battery is automatically charged when the high-voltage battery is charged.

If necessary, the 12V vehicle battery can be charged with a 12V charger.

NOTICE

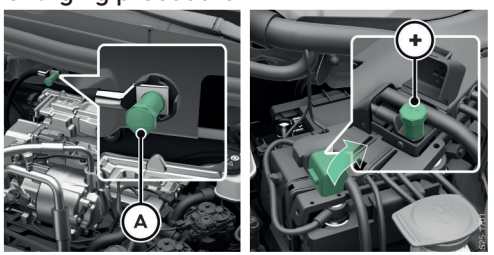
Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!

- Charge the 12V car battery with a current of max. 0.1 times its total capacity until fully charged.

Charging conditions

- Ignition off
- Power consumers switched off

Charging procedure



Under the bonnet: Earth point and ⊕ charging pole

Ⓐ Earth point

⊕ ⊕ charging pole of the 12V vehicle battery (under the cap)

1. Tilt the ⊕ pole cap out.
2. The charger terminal ⊕ must be connected to the ⊕ pole.
3. Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the Ⓐ earth point.
4. Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
5. After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
6. Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12V vehicle battery.
7. Close the ⊕ pole cap.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the 12V vehicle battery!

- A discharged 12V vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

12V vehicle battery charging fault

illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster display informing of a charging fault of the 12V vehicle battery

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster display informing of a charging fault of the 12V vehicle battery

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery fault

illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster display informing of a fault of the 12V vehicle battery

1. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Insufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

illuminated

A message on the instrument cluster display informing of a low or discharged 12V vehicle battery

1. Turn on the ignition. The high-voltage battery starts charging the 12V vehicle battery.

   Or:

   Drive a distance of several km to recharge the 12V vehicle battery.

   Or:

   Charge the high-voltage battery. The 12V vehicle battery will be charged at the same time as the high-voltage battery.

   Or:

   Charge the 12V vehicle battery with the charger.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Using jump start cables

Use

A vehicle with a discharged or defective 12V vehicle battery can be put into operation using jump start cables connected to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

- Do not jump start the car with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  - The discharged 12V vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12V vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.

- The electrolyte level in the 12V vehicle battery is low » page 191.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the auxiliary 12-volt vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery.

Self-help

Using a 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle to start the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury! Risk of damage to the vehicle

- Position the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of short circuit

- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
- The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12V vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
- The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connecting the jump start cables

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Connect the terminals of the jump start cables of the discharged 12V vehicle battery and the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery as shown below.

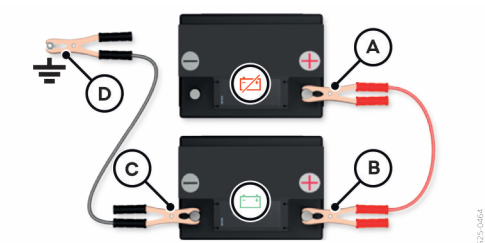
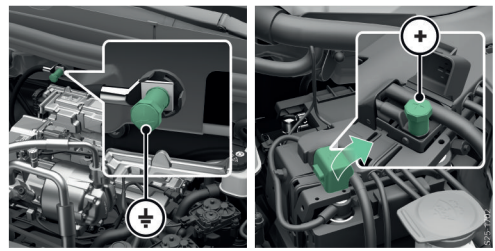


Illustration of the wiring diagram

Ⓐ ⊕ pole of the discharged 12V vehicle battery
Ⓑ ⊕ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery
Ⓒ ⊖ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery (or earth point)
Ⓓ ✚ earth point in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery



Under the bonnet: Earth point and ⊕ pole of the 12V vehicle battery (under the cap)

Putting the vehicle into operation

1. Start the engine of the assistance vehicle and let it idle *(applies to vehicles with an internal combustion engine)* .

   Or:

   Switch on the electric drive of the assistance vehicle *(applies to a vehicle with an electric motor)* .
2. Switch on the ignition in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery.

   If the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery is not ready to drive within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cables

1. Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- Do not repair fuses or replace them with higher-rated fuses.
- Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- We recommend using replacement fuses from the Škoda Genuine Accessory range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

One fuse may serve several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

NOTICE
Dirt and moisture in the fuses can cause damage to electrical equipment!

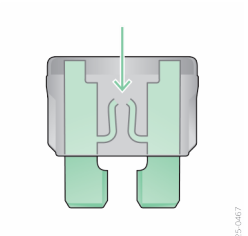
- Protect the fuses from dirt and moisture.

High voltage system fuse (for rescuers)
The high-voltage system fuse is marked with an orange sticker so that rescuers can disconnect the high voltage in the vehicle as quickly as possible.

WARNING
Danger of life-threatening injury or electric shock and risk of severe burns!

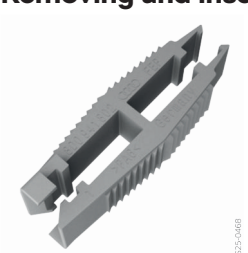
- Do not change the fuse of the high-voltage system yourself!
- Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Functionality
Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

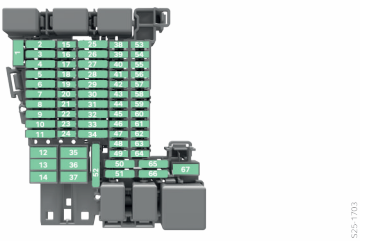
Conditions for replacing a fuse
- Ignition off
- The driver's door open
- All consumers switched off

Removing and inserting


1. Replace the fuse by means of the clamp located under the fuse box cover in the space under the bonnet.

Use the appropriate end of the clamp based on the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview


Fuse number	Consumer
2	Airbags
3	Towing bracket
4	Front camera for assistance systems, interior rear-view mirror with automatic dimming
5	Vehicle exterior lighting
6	Interior and background lighting
7	Front seat heating
8	Sunroof
9	Window control (left side of the vehicle), central locking (left side of the vehicle), left outside rear view mirror (heating, folding, setting the position of the glass)
10	Left rear headlamp
11	Towing bracket
13	Central locking, windscreen washer, charging socket cover locking
14	Music amplifier
17	Exterior rear view mirrors, rear view radar sensors, parking aid
18	Steering wheel lock, KESSY (keyless lock), antennas for digital key
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	Phone box
21	Rear view camera, area view system (Top View)

Fuse number	Consumer
22	Engine control system
24	Right rear headlamp, middle rear headlamp
25	Driver's seat belt tensioner
26	Window control (right side of the vehicle), central locking (right side of the vehicle), right outside rear view mirror (heating, folding, setting the position of the glass)
27	Passenger's seat belt tensioner
28	High-voltage battery control system – safe disconnection of the high-voltage system The fuse may only be replaced by a specialist garage
29	Towing bracket
30	The Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
32	Exterior vehicle lighting, third brake light, registration plate lighting
33	USB sockets at the front, USB sockets at the back
34	Heating / air conditioning
36	Heating/air conditioning fan
38	Adjustable lumbar support for front seats
39	Control lever under the steering wheel
40	Alarm system horn
41	Data bus
43	Internal temperature sensor and CO_2, heated rear window
44	Rain and light sensor, light control, anti-theft alarm, diagnostic socket, button bar in the dashboard, roof module
45	Control lever under the steering wheel
46	Infotainment screen
47	Adaptive chassis control (DCC)
52	12 V socket in the centre console
59	USB sockets at the front, USB sockets at the back
60	Diagnostic socket
61	Drive system
66	Rear wiper
67	Rear window heating

Self-help

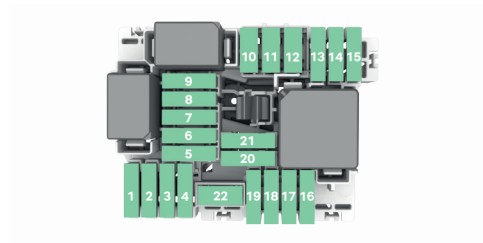
Replacing a fuse



1. Remove the fuse box cover.
2. Replace the fuse.
3. Fit the cover and click it into place.

Fuses in the space under the bonnet

Overview

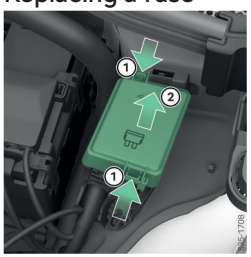


Fuse number	Consumer
1	Front radar, front radar sensors
2	Engine sound generator
4	Front wipers
5	All-wheel drive
6	Front left headlight
7	Front right headlight
8	Horn
9	Air conditioning, electric heater
10	Radiator fan
11	Electric brake servo – motor
13	Electric brake servo – valves
14	Traction motor, on-board charger
15	Main relay coil
16	Coolant pump, radiator louvers
17	Pump and valves for thermal management of high-voltage battery

Fuse number	Consumer
18	Engine control system
19	Radiator fan

Self-help

Replacing a fuse



1. Press and hold the fuse latch.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Replace the fuse.
4. Fit the cover and click it into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

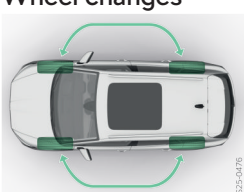
ⓘ NOTICE

- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- Clean the light-alloy wheels of gritty materials.
- Alloy wheel rims with a ground finish should not be used with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Incorrect tyre pressure
- Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking
- Incorrect wheel alignment
- Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

- With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.
- Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the so-called COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner *(applies to certain countries and models)* .

Overview

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 225/50 R 18 95 T

225 Tyre width in mm
50 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
18 Wheel diameter in inches
95 Load index
T Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

92 630 kg
94 670 kg
95 690 kg
96 710 kg
97 730 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

T 190 km/h

⚠ WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

When checking the tread depth, all wear indicators must be checked.

A tyre is considered worn out if one or more wear indicators are flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Check the tread depth regularly.
- Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 21 26 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 21st week of 2026.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

- Tyre repair kit » page 200

Tyre pressure change

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Service*.

All-season or winter tyres

Use

All-season or winter tyres improve performance in winter weather conditions.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible performance, use tyres with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on ice-free roads without snow and at temperatures above 7°C.

When using all-season or winter tyres with a lower speed category than the specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

1. In the Infotainment system, set the speed limit based on the category of tyres fitted.
2. Affix a warning label in the driver's field of view with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted *(only applies to certain countries)* .

Overview

All-season or winter tyres are identified by the letters 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol.

The symbol on the tyre provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tyre manufacturer's sticker provides information about the grip on ice.

Settings

Set the speed limit of the tyres in the following Infotainment menu in the following way:

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Ride*.
2. Select *Winter tyre warning* and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Use

Snow chains improve handling the vehicle on icy or snowy roads.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and tyre damage

- Do not use chains on sections without snow and ice.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove the wheel covers before fitting the snow chains.
- Mount snow chains on the front wheels only.

Technical data and specifications

Permitted rim and tyre combinations for mounting snow chains:

Rim dimensions	Tyre dimensions
7J×17 ET41	215/55 R17
7J×18 ET41	215/50 R18

Only use snow chains with links no larger than 13 mm, including locks.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

- Spare wheel, jack and wheel bolt wrench are not included.
- If a tyre is damaged, use the tyre repair kit.
- If the damaged tyre cannot be repaired using the tyre repair kit, seek assistance of a specialist garage or contact your assistance service.
- When a vehicle is factory-fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance, it is not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Self-help

Before replacing the wheel

⚠ WARNING

There must be no persons in the vehicle during the wheel change. When replacing a wheel, all persons should stay off the carriageway, e.g. behind crash barriers.

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

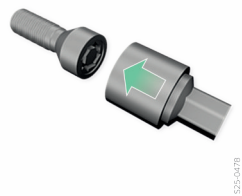
   Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Close all doors, the boot lid and the bonnet.
4. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Before loosening the bolts

- If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 204.
- If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 204.

Instructions for a vehicle with anti-theft wheel bolts

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



1. Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

Removing the bolts

⚠ WARNING

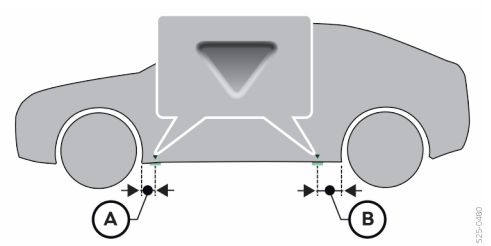
- If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



1. Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
2. Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.



Ⓐ 19.4 cm

Ⓑ 16.3 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

- The jack is not included in the vehicle equipment. To lift the vehicle, use a jack with a capacity corresponding to the maximum permissible weight of the loaded vehicle.
- When lifting the vehicle, follow the instructions in the jack manufacturer's instruction manual.
- Always lift the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.
- Do not switch on the ignition of the lifted vehicle.

1. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
2. Lift the vehicle so that the wheel is off the ground.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

- Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

Replacing a wheel

1. Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
2. Carefully remove the wheel.
3. Fit the replacement wheel.
4. Contact tighten the bolts.
5. Lower the vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

The following information applies to factory-built or Škoda original-accessory wheel trims.

- Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

1. Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
2. Refit the wheel bolt caps » page 204.

   Or:

   Refit the full wheel covers » page 204.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the Škoda Genuine Parts.

After replacement

1. Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
2. In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

   The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.
4. Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.
5. Replace the damaged tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

Tyre repair kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

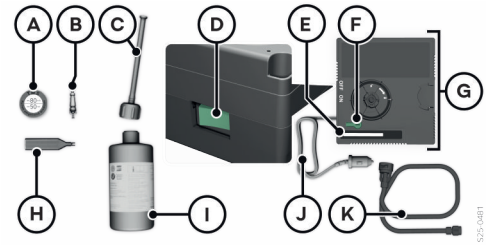
The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

- Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.
- Do not remove a foreign object such as a screw or nail from a damaged tyre.

Overview

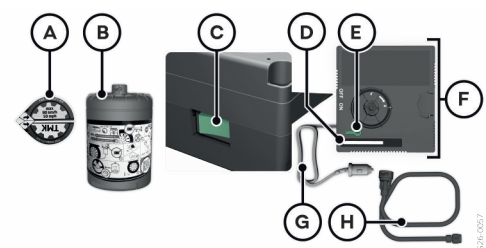
The set is stored in a box under the intermediate floor in the luggage compartment.

Declaration of conformity is included with the compressor or in the on-board folders.



Option 1

Ⓐ Speed limit sticker
Ⓑ Replacement valve insert
Ⓒ Filler hose with plug
Ⓓ Switch
Ⓔ Pressure indicator
Ⓕ Pneumatic pressure relief button
Ⓖ Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
Ⓗ Extension for removing and inserting the valve insert
Ⓘ Filling bottle
Ⓙ Plug for 12V socket
Ⓚ Tyre inflation hose



Option 2

Ⓐ Speed limit sticker
Ⓑ Filling bottle
Ⓒ Switch
Ⓓ Pressure indicator
Ⓔ Pneumatic pressure relief button
Ⓕ Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
Ⓖ Plug for 12V socket
Ⓗ Tyre inflation hose

Restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

- The rim is damaged.
- Outside temperature is below –30 °C.
- The puncture in the tyre is larger than 4 mm.
- The side of the tyre is damaged.
- The expiry date on the filler bottle has passed.

Self-help

Before using the kit

The following information applies to the variant 1.

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors, the boot lid and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

The following information applies to the variant 2.

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors, the boot lid and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.
6. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
7. Shake the sealant bottle.

Sealing the tyre

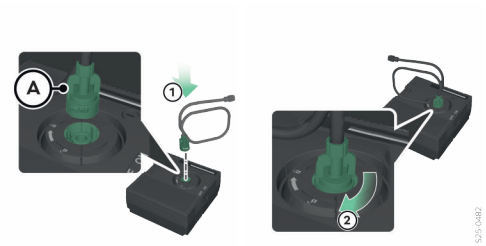
The following information applies to the variant 1.

1. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
2. Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
3. Shake the sealant bottle.
4. Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
5. Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
6. Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
7. Remove the filler hose from the valve.
8. Screw on the valve insert.

Before inflating the tyre

The following information applies to the variant 1.

1. Remove the air hose from the rear of the compressor.



1. Insert the hose end Ⓐ into the compressor so that the guide projections in the compressor are aligned with the holes in the hose end.
2. Secure the hose by turning it in the direction of the arrow.

Inflating the tyre

The following information applies to the variant 1.

1. Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Turn on the ignition.
4. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
5. Switch on the compressor.
6. When the pressure reaches 2.0–2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time specified by the kit manufacturer.
7. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0–2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
8. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
9. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

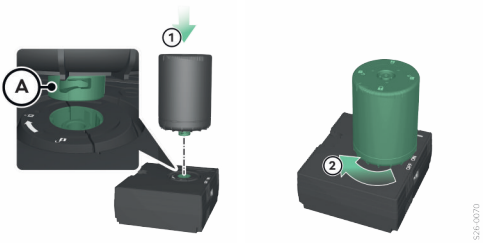
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!
Maximum compressor run time is 8 minutes.

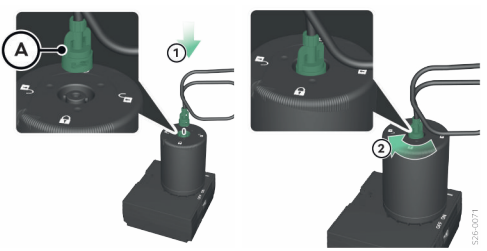
- Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

Sealing and inflating the tyre

The following information applies to the variant 2.



1. Fit the Ⓐ bottle valve into the compressor so that the protrusions in the compressor align with the holes in the bottle.
2. Secure the bottle by turning it in the direction of the arrow.
3. Remove the speed limit sticker from the bottle and place it in the driver's field of vision.
4. Remove the air hose from the rear of the compressor.



1. Fit the end of the Ⓐ tube into the bottle so that the protrusions in the bottle align with the holes in the tube.
2. Secure the hose by turning it in the direction of the arrow.
3. Attach the other end of the hose to the tyre valve.
4. Place the bottle compressor on a level surface.
5. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
6. Turn on the ignition.
7. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
8. Switch on the compressor.
9. When the pressure reaches 2.0–2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time, which is 8 minutes.
10. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0–2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
11. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.

12. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the compressor!
Maximum compressor run time is 8 minutes.
- Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

After inflating the tyre

⚠ WARNING
Risk of getting burned!
The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.
- Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

The following information applies to the variant 1.

1. Release the tyre air hose from the compressor by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow.
2. Remove the hose and return it into the back of the compressor.
3. Screw back the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
4. Remove the compressor plug from the 12 V socket.

The following information applies to the variant 2.

1. Remove the tyre inflation hose from the tyre valve.
2. Unlock the tyre inflation hose from the inflation bottle by turning it against the direction of the arrow, remove it and insert it back into the back of the compressor.
3. Unlock the bottle from the compressor by turning it against the direction of the arrow and remove it.
4. Screw back the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
5. Remove the compressor plug from the 12 V socket.

After using the kit
If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0–2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

1. Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre
1. Place a speed limit sticker in the driver's view.
2. Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
3. If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.
4. If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

Tyre pressure

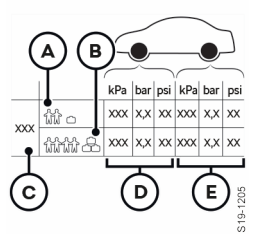
What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.
- Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
- Adjust tyre pressure in the environment and at the ambient temperatures in which the vehicle will be operated.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
- If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Overview

Label with the specified tyre pressure values
The sticker for storing tyre pressure readings is located on the centre body pillar on the driver's side.



Ⓐ Tyre pressure in case of partial load

Ⓑ Tyre pressure when fully loaded

Ⓒ Information on tyres
This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. This is not a list of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle, they are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Dec-

laration of Conformity, the so-called COC document.

(D) Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres

(E) Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The vehicle is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not replace regular maintenance and checking of the tyres. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tyre pressure at all times, even if the system has not yet issued a tyre pressure warning.

The tyre pressure monitor indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Tyre pressure change alert

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Service*.

Restrictions

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- Uneven wheel loading, e.g. driving with a trailer
- Sporty driving style
- Driving on dirt roads
- Mounted snow chains

Settings

Storing the tyre pressure

1. On the infotainment system, press > > > *Service*.
2. Press *SET* in the menu displayed.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

- Change of tyre pressure
- Change of one or more wheels
- Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
- Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

flashes approx. 1 minute and then remains lit

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

   If the indicator light flashes again after starting the engine, there is a fault in the system.
3. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
4. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Removing and inserting

Removing the cap



1. Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
2. Remove the cap.

Inserting the caps

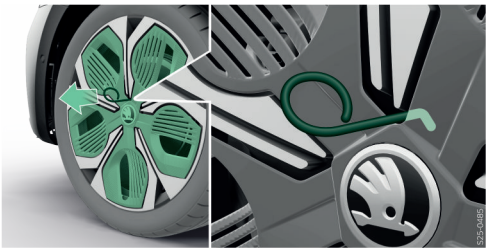
1. Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full-width wheel cover

Removing and inserting

Removing the trim

The following information applies to factory-built Aero or Škoda original-accessory wheel trims.



1. Put the hook for removing the wheel trims behind the rim close to the centre.
2. Pull the centre of the wheel trim loose and remove the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Inserting the trim

The following information applies to factory-built Aero or Škoda original-accessory wheel trims.

1. Fit the trim to the wheel rim and gradually push the individual spokes of the trim until they are fully engaged.
2. Push the centre of the trim until it is fully engaged.

NOTICE

- Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removing the trim

The following information does not apply to Aero wheel trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Put the hook for removing the wheel trims to the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
2. Push the wheel bolt wrench through the hook, rest it on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Inserting the trim

The following information does not apply to Aero wheel trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Insert the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

   When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

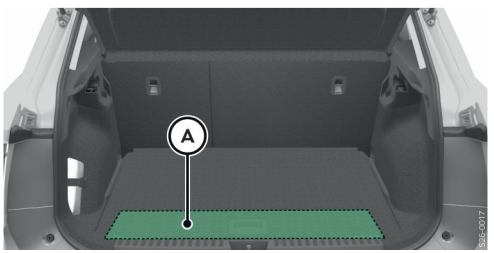
NOTICE

- Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Luggage compartment equipment

Overview



Ⓐ Below the intermediate floor:
- Space for stowing the charging cables

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!

Charging cables can be ejected from the luggage compartment in an accident.

- Stow the cables in the places provided for storing charging cables.

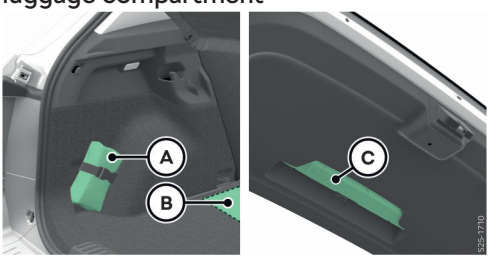
ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the space under the intermediate floor.

Emergency equipment

Overview

Location of emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



Ⓐ First aid kit

Ⓑ Tool kit

Ⓒ Warning triangle

ⓘ For easier access to the tool kit, set the variable loading floor to the parking position » page 209.

Removing the warning triangle



1. Press the locking button and remove the warning triangle.

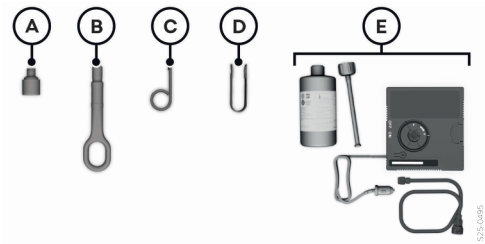
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the front and rear doors.

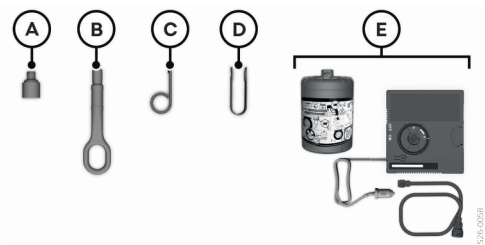
Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



Option 1



Option 2

Ⓐ Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

Ⓑ Towing eye

Ⓒ Hook for removing the full wheel covers

Ⓓ Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

Ⓔ Tyre repair kit

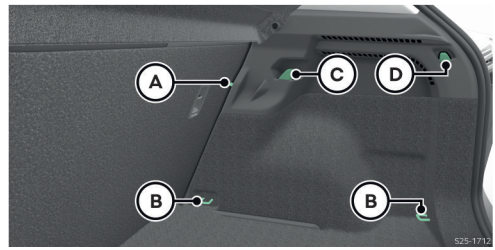
In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

ⓘ NOTICE

- When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

Fasteners in the boot

Overview



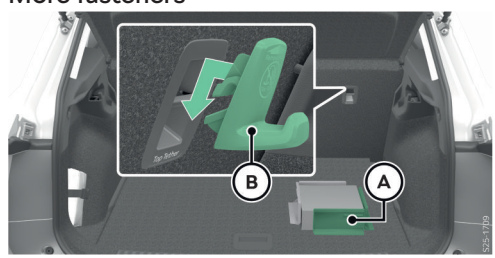
Ⓐ Lashing eye for securing the fastening nets

Ⓑ Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Maximum load of each individual eye 50 kg

Ⓒ Bag hook
Max. load 4 kg

Ⓓ Hook for securing load and securing nets
Max. load 2.5 kg

More fasteners



Ⓐ Cargo element
Max. load 8 kg
Space for storing the Cargo element is under the variable loading floor in the luggage compartment.

1. Fold down the Cargo element and fix it to the intermediate floor in the luggage compartment.

Ⓑ Hook for lashing eye of TOP TETHER load securing system and cable bags
Max. load 5 kg

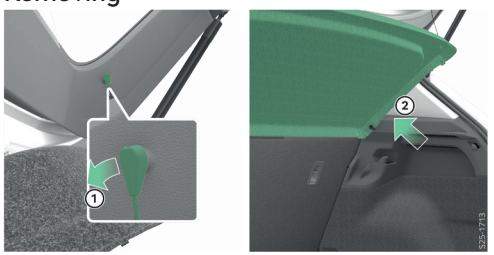
Rigid boot lid

Removing and inserting

⚠ WARNING

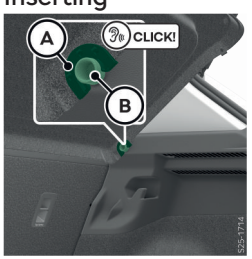
- Do not put any items on the rigid boot cover

Removing



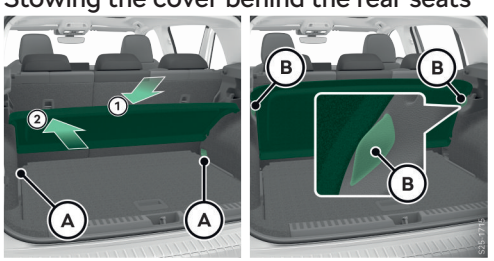
1. Unhook the straps.
2. Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.
3. Remove the cover.

Inserting



1. Insert the mount Ⓐ opposite the holder Ⓑ on both sides of the boot.
2. Press on the cover from above until it engages.
3. Hook in the retaining straps.

Stowing the cover behind the rear seats



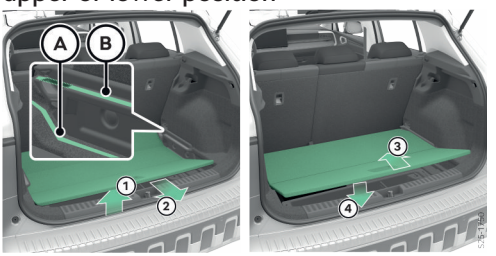
1. Slide the front cover diagonally behind the front eyelets Ⓐ.
2. Push the cover until it locks between the rear seats and Ⓑ cover holder.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

Settings

The maximum load on the variable loading floor in the upper position is 75 kg.

Adjusting the variable loading floor to upper or lower position



1. Lift the variable loading floor.
2. Pull the variable loading floor towards you.

   To adjust it to the **lower** position, place the front of the variable loading floor on surface Ⓐ.

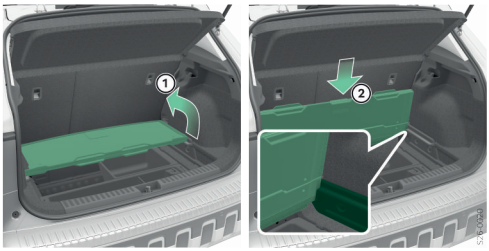
   To adjust it to the **upper** position, place the front of the variable loading floor on surface Ⓑ.
3. Push the variable loading all the way forward.
4. Place the variable loading floor down.

Parking position

For easier access to the onboard tools, for example, the variable loading floor can be set to the upper parking position.



1. Fold the rear part of the intermediate floor forwards.



1. Fold the intermediate floor forward.
2. Slide the folded variable loading floor into side lining .

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!
If the variable loading floor is set to the parking position while driving, it can be thrown into the vehicle interior in the event of an accident or sudden driving manoeuvre.

- Make sure that the variable loading floor is always in a horizontal position when driving with the rear seat backrests folded down or tilted.
- Make sure that the rear seat backrests are correctly locked in the upright position while driving if the variable loading floor is set to the parking position.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the intermediate floor, trunk trim or loudspeaker!

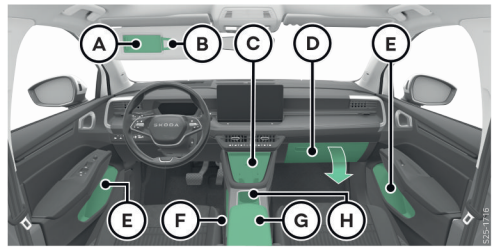
- Handle the intermediate floor with care.
- Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
- Do not transport loose objects, particularly sharp-edged objects, in the area under the variable loading floor.

Removing and inserting

1. Raise the variable loading floor about 15 cm below the level of the boot lid and remove it.
2. Insert it in the reverse way.

Interior equipment front

Overview



Ⓐ Make-up mirror

Ⓑ Ticket holder

Ⓒ Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):

- Phone box
- Cable grommet

Ⓓ Storage compartment

Max. load 3 kg

There is a card holder and a glasses box in the box.

1. Pull the handle to open the storage compartment.

Ⓔ Storage compartment

- Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
- Space for waste container
- Storage compartment for reflective vest

Ⓕ Storage compartment

- 12V socket
- USB inputs

  The USB inputs allow charging and data transfer.

Ⓖ Adjustable armrest with a storage compartment

1. To open the compartment, lift the armrest.

Ⓗ Cup holder

Inserted floor mats

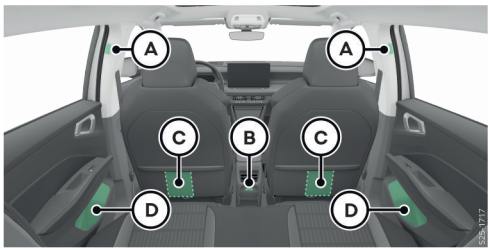
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Floor mats in the footwell should always be securely fastened with clips.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



Ⓐ Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

Ⓑ USB inputs
The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

Ⓒ Storage pocket
- Storage pocket for a phone

Ⓓ Storage compartment
- Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1 l
- Space for waste container
- Storage compartment for reflective vest

⚠ WARNING

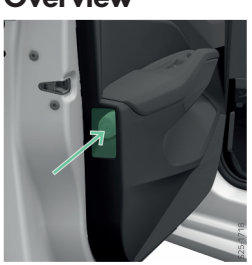
- Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not put objects into the Ⓒ storage pocked that may damage it.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

- Only insert an umbrella from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.
- Always insert the umbrella all the way into the storage compartment.

Phone box

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

- The phone may become warm; take care when removing it from the storage compartment.
- Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a hot metal object in the storage compartment, remove the phone and allow it to cool down in the storage compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of deletion or damage of stored data!

- Do not place identification cards, debit and credit cards with magnetic strips or chips in the phone storage compartment.

Functionality

Phone box charges your phone wirelessly with up to 15 W charging power.

Recommendations for optimal function

- The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.
- Insert the phone without its protective case.
- Place the phone in the centre of the phone compartment.

Overview



Insert a phone not larger than the space for the phone into the storage box.

Charging indicator

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- – the phone is in the glove box, it is detected, and it is being charged.
- – the phone is in the glove box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.
- The symbol is not displayed – charging is switched off / the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged / the function is not available.

Operating conditions

- Ignition is on.
- The phone supports the Qi standard.
- There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Operation

Switching charging off/on

1. Tap > > > in the Infotainment system.
2. Select wireless charging for mobile devices.

Troubleshooting

Phone cannot be charged

The Infotainment system screen shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol is illuminated in the status bar.

- Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Place the phone again in the centre of the phone compartment.
- Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone compartment.

Cup holder

Overview

⚠ CAUTION

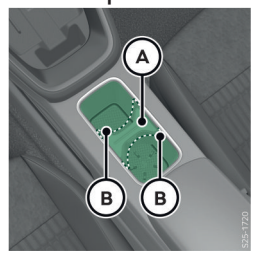
Risk of scalding!

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and the upholstery from spilled drinks!

Front cup holder



Ⓐ Adjustable part with card holder
Ⓑ Extreme position of the adjustable bulkhead

The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

1. Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

ⓘ NOTICE

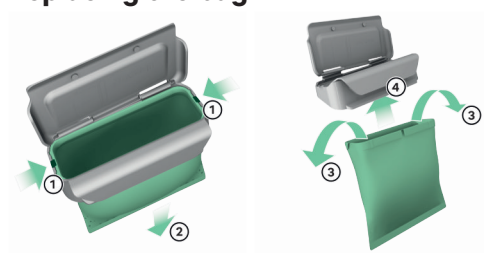
- Insert the adjustable bulkhead so that the side grooves are not visible.

Rear cup holder



Waste container

Replacing the bag



12V socket

What you should be mindful of

The sockets can be used for connecting one or more accessories. The total power input of connected accessories must not exceed 120 W.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the fuse or the vehicle electrical system!
- Only use the sockets to connect approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

Temporarily, it is possible to connect a single accessory with up to 180 W power input subject to the fulfilment of the following conditions:

- Ignition on
- Use of only one socket
- Maximum power supply time 10 minutes

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the connected consumers!
- Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off.

NOTICE
Danger of discharging the 12V vehicle battery by connected appliances!
The sockets work even when the ignition is switched off.

V2L adapter

Use

The V2L adapter, hereinafter referred to as “adapter”, enables the power supply of electrical devices from the charging socket (AC) via Vehicle-to-Load function.

What you should be mindful of

Observe the safety instructions listed in the chapter on the high-voltage system *» page 168, What you should be mindful of*.

WARNING
Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!
- Never use the adapter in places where there is a risk of explosion. The adapter components may cause sparks, thereby igniting explosive fumes.
- If electrical devices become too hot, turn them off and unplug immediately.

NOTICE
Using an unsuitable adapter can damage the charging socket!
- We recommend using only an adapter from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the adapter and the connected electrical devices!
- Provide sufficient free space around the adapter for proper ventilation. Do not cover the adapter with anything during use.
- Handle the adapter with care.
- Do not use a damaged adapter.
- Store the adapter in a dry place.
- Do not disassemble or make any further modifications to the adapter. Damage caused by modifications or disassembly is not covered by the warranty.
- Unshielded devices may cause interference to the vehicle's infotainment and electronics.
- Regularly check the tight securing of both the adapter and the plug of the electrical device during use.
- Comply with the instructions in the operating instructions of the electrical equipment.
- Do not use the adapter together with an extension cord, cable reel or multiple power outlets.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical system
- Never connect devices that supply electricity, such as solar panels, to the adapter.
- Only use the adapter to supply the approved electrical accessories.

Functionality

The adapter allows you to supply electricity from the car's high-voltage battery to power external electrical devices.

The adapter type may vary by country.

The adapter supplies electrical devices with an alternating voltage of 230 V.

The on-board car charger supports a current supply of 16 A maximum.

If the power consumption of the connected electrical devices drops below 20 W, Vehicle-to-Load function will be deactivated automatically after about 30 minutes.

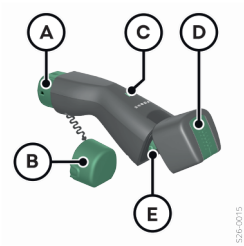
If the adapter is plugged into the charging socket, the vehicle cannot be driven off.

1. Remove the adapter from the charging socket before driving.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – the electrical device is connected to the socket of the adapter.

Overview



Reference image

Ⓐ Connector for the vehicle charging socket
Ⓑ Connector cap
Ⓒ The indicator light
Ⓓ Protective cap
Ⓔ Socket for electrical equipment

Operating conditions

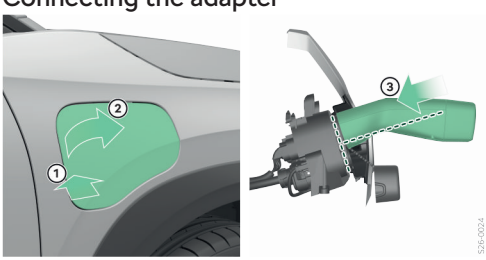
- The function is activated.
- The state of charge of the high-voltage battery is greater than 20 %.

Operation

Before using the adapter

1. Unlock the vehicle and secure it with the parking brake.

Connecting the adapter



1. Push on the charging socket cover.
2. Open the charging socket cover.
3. Remove the cap from the connector and insert the adapter into the charging socket.
4. Make sure the adapter in the charging socket is inserted straight and all the way in.

   The adapter will automatically lock in the socket.

   The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Beginning the power supply

1. Raise the rear protective cover of the adapter.
2. Connect the electrical device to the socket of the adapter.

   The indicator light on the adapter lights green.

   The indicator light in the charging socket turns off.

   The electrical device is connected and powered.

   appears on the instrument cluster display.
3. Fold down the rear protective cover of the adapter.

Terminating the power supply

1. Raise the rear protective cover of the adapter.
2. Disconnect the electrical device from the socket of the adapter.

   The indicator light on the adapter turns off.
3. Fold down the rear protective cover of the adapter.

After using the adapter

1. If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key or the button on the center console will release it.

   The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white and turns off after a while.
2. Remove the adapter from the charging socket.
3. Close the charging socket cover.

Restrictions

The adapter cannot be used simultaneously with alternating current (AC) charging.

Settings

Deactivating/activating

1. Tap > > > ••• in the Infotainment system.
2. Select *Vehicle to Load*.

Troubleshooting

Problems signalled by the indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket

illuminated
The power supply error occurred.

1. Disconnect the adapter.
2. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
3. Make sure the function is activated in the infotainment system.
4. Connect the adapter.
5. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interruption of power supply to the electrical device

The power consumption of the connected electrical devices dropped below 20 W and function was deactivated automatically after about 30 minutes.

To restart the power supply, proceed as follows:

1. Open any door or the tailgate *(unlocked* vehicle).

   Or:

   Press the button on the physical key *(applies to a locked vehicle)* .
2. If power supply does not start, unplug the adapter.
3. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
4. Make sure the function is activated in the infotainment system.
5. Connect the adapter.
6. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

The operating temperature of the environment is -40 °C to +90 °C.

Bag for stowing charging cables

Overview



The maximum bag load is 5 kg.

You can attach the bag to the lashing eye of TOP TETHERsystem.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!
Charging cables can be ejected from the bag in an accident.

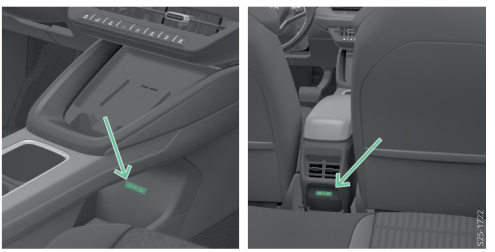
- Store the cables in the bag only when the rear seat backrests are properly secured in the upright position.
- Store the cables in the bag only when the luggage compartment cover is properly inserted in the car.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the bag.
- Do not put sharp objects in the bag.

USB inputs

Overview



The USB inputs on the centre console allow charging with the total charging power of up to 90 W and data transfer.

The rear USB inputs only allow charging with the total charging power of up to 90 W.

Roof rack and the towing bracket

Roof rack

Overview

The maximum weight of the load including the transverse roof racks **for a moving** vehicle is 75 kg.

The maximum weight of the load including the transverse roof racks **for a stationary** vehicle is 250 kg.

ⓘ The roof cross beams are attached to the roof rail.

- We recommend using transverse roof racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Removable towing bracket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

- Before each journey with the tow bar, check that it is correctly fitted in the clamp bushing.
- Do not use a damaged or incomplete tow bar.
- Do not make any modifications to the towing bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Dirt on the clamp bushing prevents the tow bar from being properly secured.

- Keep the clamp bushing of the tow bar clean.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not use excessive force when handling the key, as this could damage one of the parts.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the entire towing bracket is removed from the vehicle, it must be replaced with the original rear bumper reinforcement, which includes the towing eye sleeve.

ⓘ The car's lighting and registration plate must always be visible.

- When the towing bracket is not in use, remove the tow bar.

ⓘ The retrofitted non-removable towing bracket must not obscure the car's lighting and registration plate.

- Observe the generally applicable legislation in force in your country.

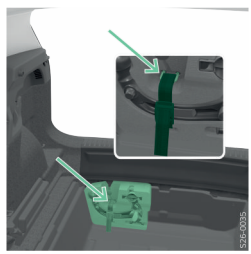
ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket or a retrofitted towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

- To tow the vehicle, attach the eyelet of the towing cable to the towing bracket » *page 133*.

Overview

Position of the towing arm

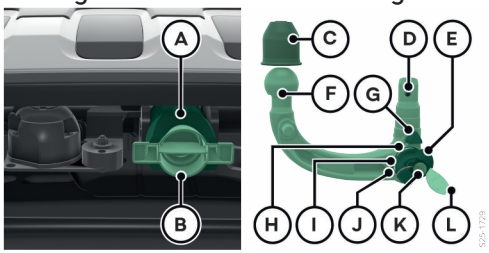
The removable towing arm is stowed in a box in the rear of the boot.



⚠ WARNING

If the trailer towing bracket has been removed from the vehicle, stow it in the box in the luggage compartment and secure it to the lashing eyelet using the retaining strap.

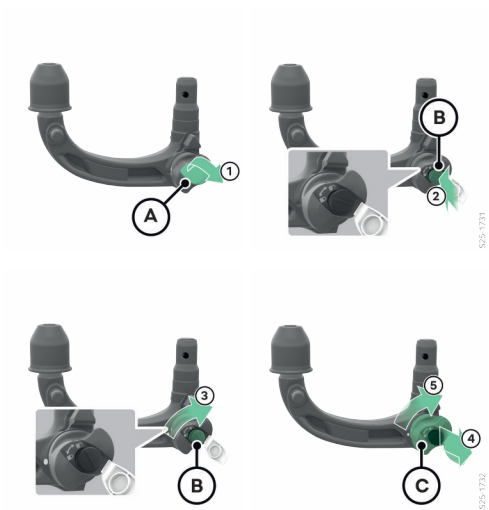
Towing bracket carrier and towing arm



Ⓐ Clamp bushing
Ⓑ Clamp bushing opening cover
Ⓒ Ball head cover
Ⓓ Locking ball
Ⓔ Hand wheel
Ⓕ Ball head
Ⓖ Centering
Ⓗ Green mark on hand wheel
Ⓘ White mark on towing arm
Ⓙ Red mark on hand wheel
Ⓚ Key
Ⓛ Lock cap

Setting the ready position

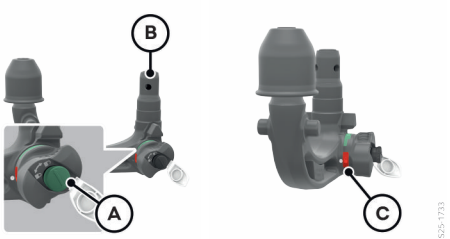
The towing arm can only be mounted when it is set in the standby position.



1. Remove the cap Ⓐ from the lock.
2. Insert the key Ⓑ into the lock. The arrow on the key must point to symbol.
3. Turn the key Ⓑ in the direction of the arrow all the way. The arrow on the key must point to symbol.
4. Pull out the hand wheel Ⓒ.
5. Turn the hand wheel in the direction of the arrow all the way. The hand wheel Ⓒ remains locked in this position.

Conditions for fitting the tow bar

The towing arm must be in the standby position.

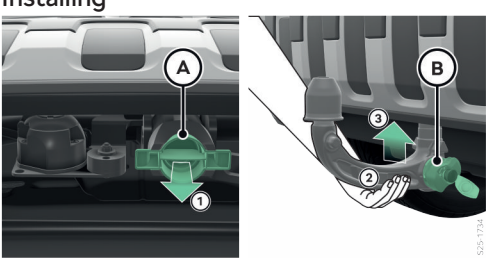


- The key Ⓐ is in the unlocked position, the arrow on the key points to symbol.
- The locking ball Ⓑ can be fully pushed into the body of the tow bar.
- The red mark Ⓒ on the hand wheel points to the white mark on the towing arm.
- There is a clear gap of approximately 4 mm between the hand wheel and the towing arm body.
- The contact surfaces of the arm and clamp bushing are clean.

The key in the standby position cannot be removed from the lock The towing arm set in this way is ready for assembly.

Installing the tow bar

Installing



1. Remove the cap of the clamp bushing Ⓐ.
2. Hold the tow bar from the bottom.
3. Slide the tow bar into the clamp bushing upwards until it clicks into place.

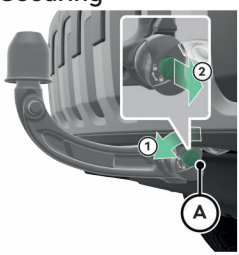
The hand wheel Ⓑ turns back by itself and abuts to the towing arm.

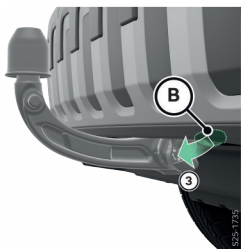
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Keep your fingers out of the rotation path of the hand wheel when clamping the arm.

Securing

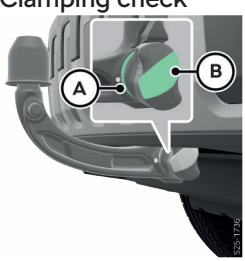




1. Turn the key Ⓐ.

   The arrow on the key must point to 🔓 symbol.
2. Remove the key.
3. Attach the cap Ⓑ to the lock.

Clamping check



- The tow bar is firmly held in the clamp bushing. There is no play when it is pushed hard.
- The green mark Ⓐ on the hand wheel points to the white mark on the towing arm.
- The hand wheel fits tightly to the towing arm.
- The key is removed and cap Ⓑ is fitted on the lock.

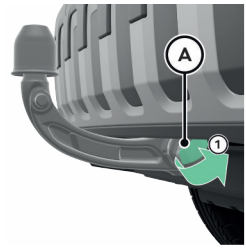
Removing the tow bar

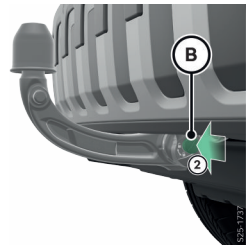
ⓘ NOTICE

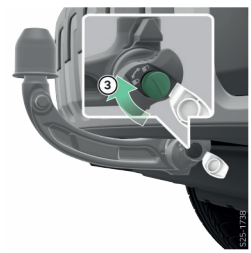
Risk of damage to the vehicle

- When releasing the tow bar, no trailer or other accessories must be attached to it.

ⓘ Before removing the tow bar, refit the ball cap.



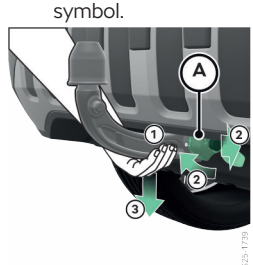




1. Remove the cap Ⓐ from the lock.
2. Insert the key Ⓑ into the lock.

   The arrow on the key must point to 🔓 symbol.
3. Turn the key.

   The arrow on the key must point to 🔒 symbol.



1. Hold the tow bar from the bottom.
2. Pull out the hand wheel Ⓐ and turn it all the way in the direction of the arrow.

   Hold it firmly in this position. If you do not turn the hand wheel all the way, it turns back after removing the towing arm, abuts to the towing arm and does not lock in the standby position.
3. Remove the towing arm by pulling down from the clamp bushing.

   At the same time, the towing arm is locked in the standby position.

After removing the tow arm, replace the cap of the clamp bushing opening.

Operation

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

Information on the towing bracket load, the use of a bicycle rack and other accessories can be found at » page 226.

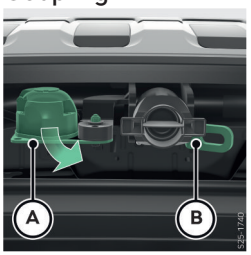
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not use the safety eyelet for towing.
- Load and secure the load correctly.
- Do not exceed the permissible trailer weight.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the towing bracket and the maximum length of the installed accessories.

1 The towing bracket has an 13-pin socket . If the trailer has a 7-pin plug, use a reduction piece from Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Coupling



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Fit the tow bar.
3. Swivel out electric socket (A).
4. Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.
5. Insert the trailer electric plug into socket (A).
6. Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto safety eyelet (B). The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electronic system!
Total power consumption of all appliances connected to the trailer's electrical network may be no more than 350 W

Troubleshooting

When removing the tow bar – the bar did not fall freely out after being released.

1. Push down on the tow bar with the other hand.

Maintenance and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster screen.

The service intervals are based on standard operating conditions.

Under adverse operating conditions, we recommend you to carry out some work before the next service date or between the specified service intervals.

In case of uncertainty about previous work before the scheduled service interval, contact a professional service.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service intervals, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the Škoda Auto warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

We recommend that you have the document about the performed service inspection printed out by a specialist garage.

Displaying the service due date

1. On the infotainment, press > > > > *Service Service*.

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

Škoda Service Partner

All Škoda authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda genuine parts

The Škoda genuine parts are approved by the Škoda Auto company, i.e. they correspond exactly to the Škoda Auto's regulations and are identical to the parts used in the serial production of the car.

Škoda Auto is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda genuine parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Škoda genuine accessories

With these accessories, Škoda Auto is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda genuine parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

After following the link or scanning the QR code, a website with information about Škoda Genuine Accessories will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/accessories

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a Škoda Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Component protection

Some electronic components of the car (e.g. the instrument cluster) are equipped with component protection at the factory, which limits the functionality of these components when they are installed illegally in another car (e.g. after theft) or when operated outside the car. Component protection allows a qualified service technician to install or replace components and control units.

If a component protection message appears on the instrument cluster or the Infotainment system screen, contact a qualified workshop. Škoda Auto recommends using the services of a Škoda Service Partner.

Additional installation of a customer-specific control unit (KFG)

For information on the additional installation of a customer-specific control unit (KFG) from the range of Škoda Genuine Accessories, contact a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda prepaid service

The following information applies to the Czech Republic.

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use steam, aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents. Solvents can permanently damage airbag modules

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Microfibre Suedia / Textile

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
- Do not use leather conditioners, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover, etc. on microfibre Suedia or synthetic leather upholstery.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

- If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

- Leather and microfibre materials Suedia may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat

upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.

- Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel!

- Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

- Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
- Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!

- Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

- Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Artificial leather / Suedia microfiber / Textile

- Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove fresh stains with a cotton or woollen cloth slightly moistened with water, or with a weak soapy solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
- Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose.

Plastic parts

- Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

- Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

- Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system
- Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents designed for this purpose.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

- When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Instrument cluster screen

- Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
- Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

- Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

- Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

- Remove dirt with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)].

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

- Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

⚠ NOTICE

- Bird droppings, insect residues, street and sea salt residues, etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
- Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
- Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- Do not treat matte painted parts with polish or hard wax.
- Do not polish foils.
- It is recommended to treat door seals and window guides with appropriate products from Škoda original accessories intended for this purpose. These ensure that the protective paint layer on the seals and window guides is not damaged.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

ⓘ NOTICE

On vehicles with Aero wheel trims, dirt can get between the wheel disc and the trim. This can lead to damage to the paintwork.

- To prevent damage, regularly clean the wheel discs also under the Aero wheel trims.

Before driving through a car wash

- Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the aerial, etc.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
- If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle needs to move freely in the car wash, the following conditions must be met before entering:

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Automatic transmission selector lever in mode **N**
- ✓ Electric parking brake is switched off
- ✓ Deactivated Auto Hold

When washing a vehicle in a car wash

ⓘ NOTICE

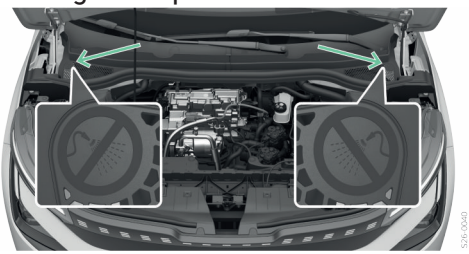
Risk of wheel blockage by automatically switching to the **P** automatic gearbox mode!

- If the vehicle is to move freely in the car wash, do not lift weight from the driver's seat without a fastened safety belt.

After washing with wax protection

- Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Washing with a pressure washer



ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not spray water directly under the bonnet. This is indicated by a symbol on the cover.
- Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.
- Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  - Components of the high-voltage system, e.g. charging socket, high-voltage cables, etc.
  - Space under the bonnet
  - Films
  - Lock cylinders
  - Bodywork joints
  - Towing bracket socket
  - Tilting towing arm
  - Camera lenses and sensors
  - Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Vehicles delivered with matte finish body paint from the factory

It is not recommended to apply decorative or protective films to a vehicle with matte finish.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of scratching the matte paint with the nylon brushes of the dishwasher!

- Do not wash the vehicle with matte paint in automatic car washes.

⚠ NOTICE

- Do not polish or wax the matte paint.
- Do not use wax-based cleaners.
- Do not use ceramic matt paint protection. Ceramic protection can affect the tint and make possible repair of the paintwork impossible.

Cleaning charging cables

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

- Only clean the charging cable after disconnecting it from the vehicle and the charging point.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the charging cable!

- Do not allow water to get into the contacts of the charging cable.
- Wipe the charging cable with a dry cloth.
- For heavy soiling, use a damp cloth without any detergent.
- If you do not use the charging cable for a long time, clean it before using it again.

Cleaning the V2L adapter

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the adapter!

- Make sure that no water or other dirt gets into the contacts of the adapter.

Instructions for cleaning

High Voltage System Instructions

- Stop charging and close the charging socket.
- Switch off the ignition.
- The components of the high-voltage system must not be damaged, e.g. the orange cables.

Hand washing

- Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights[1)].
- Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

⚠ NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not use any solvent-based cleaners, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects on the wiper blades as they will damage the graphite layer of the blades during cleaning.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60 °C

After hand washing

The following information applies to vehicles delivered with glossy finish body paint from the factory.

- Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

The following information applies to vehicles delivered with matte finish body paint from the factory.

- Rinse and wipe the car with a suitable clean cloth in one direction.

Vehicle paint

The following information applies to vehicles delivered with glossy finish body paint from the factory.

- Protect the paint at least twice a year with hard wax.
- Use polish on paintwork that has become dull due to prolonged exposure to sunlight and weathering.

The following information applies to vehicles delivered with matte finish body paint from the factory.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

⚠ NOTICE

There is a risk of scratching the matte paint with the nylon brushes of the car wash.

- Do not wash the vehicle with matte paint in automatic car washes.

⚠ NOTICE

- Do not polish or wax the matte paint.
- Do not use wax-based cleaners.
- Do not use ceramic matt paint protection. Ceramic protection can affect the tint and make possible repair of the paintwork impossible.

Care instructions for matte finish body paint from the factory:

- Use soft, clean microfibre cloths with recommended cleaning agents for cleaning.
- To remove visible dust and dirt, clean the surface with plenty of water.
- Remove resin, bird droppings, insect debris and other dirt by soaking with water. Then spray the body with a special matt finish cleaner and wipe it with a microfibre cloth.
- Remove fingerprints and grease with a soft microfibre cloth.
- Remove asphalt stains with a dedicated cleaner.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

- sunlight
- moisture
- air pollution
- stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

- Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.
- We then recommend treating the spot with hard wax.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

- Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

- After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Towing bracket

- If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

V2L adapter

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

- Clean the adapter only when it is disconnected from the vehicle and electrical appliances.
- Clean the adapter with a dry or slightly damp cloth.
- Use the means intended for this purpose to clean the contacts, or contact a professional service.

Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, so called COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact the specifications and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

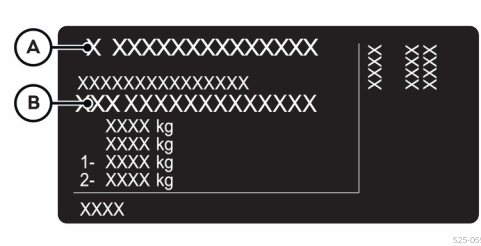
The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

- in the space under the bonnet on the right
- on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate

Ⓐ Vehicle manufacturer

Ⓑ Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN screen

1. Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.
2. Select the VIN display screen.

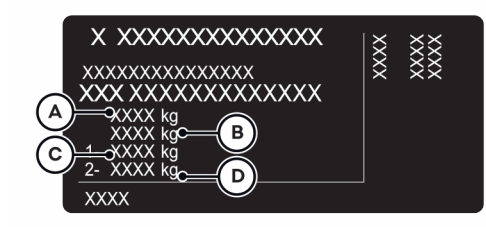
Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Axle weights and loads

Maximum permissible weights are listed on the type plate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar.



Ⓐ Permissible total weight

Ⓑ Permissible total weight of the loaded combination of vehicles, if the vehicle is used for towing

Ⓒ Maximum permissible front axle load

Ⓓ Maximum permissible rear axle load

Payloads

Use the difference between the permissible total weight of the vehicle and the operating weight to find the approximate maximum payload weight.

Include the following items in the payload:

- The weight of the passengers
- The weight of all luggage and other cargo
- The weight of the load on the roof, including the weight of the roof racks
- The weight of the equipment excluded from the operating weight
- Vertical ball head load when using a towing device » *page 226*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit.

Operating weight

Electric motor type	Operating weight (kg)
85 kW electric motor	1542
99 kW electric motor	1542
155 kW electric motor	1544

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Overall dimensions

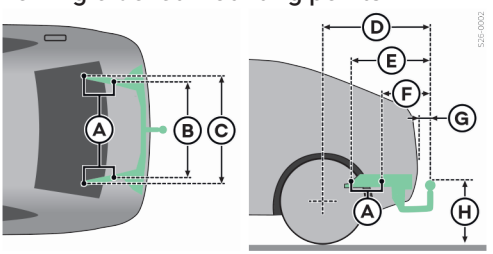
Specification	Value (in mm)
Vehicle height [a] at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	1547–1607
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	2000
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	1837
Vehicle clearance at operating weight (depending on the chassis type)	140–157
Vehicle length	4171

[a] Vehicle height including roof antenna and factory-fitted roof rack.

Towing bracket

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



Ⓐ Mounting points on the bodywork

Ⓑ Mounting points spacing

Ⓒ Mounting points spacing

Ⓓ Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball

Ⓔ Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

Ⓕ Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

Ⓖ Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

Ⓗ Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

The side fastening points are mounted from the side of the vehicle.

Value in mm	
Ⓑ	1035.9
Ⓒ	1037.3
Ⓓ	859
Ⓔ	603
Ⓕ	388
Ⓖ	at least 65
Ⓗ	350–420

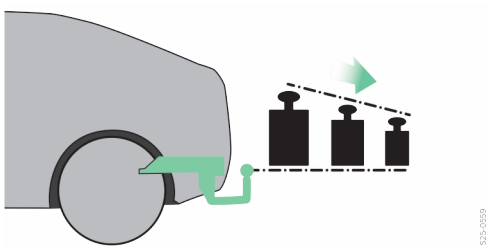
Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 75 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. In vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your Škoda Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing bracket, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories



When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

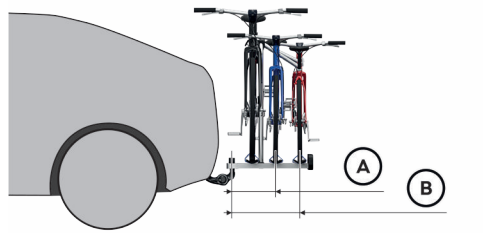
The total permissible weight of mounted accessories, including the attached load, is maximum 75 kg and varies depending on the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the tow ball.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the tow ball	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

Using the bicycle rack

Škoda Auto recommends that the number of bicycles loaded on the rack should be in accordance with the following table:

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball specific for the vehicle	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
from 75 kg	75 kg	3



Loading of the bicycle rack and maximum length to the bicycle racks

Ⓐ Maximum length 500 mm when 2 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 55 kg

Ⓑ Maximum length 700 mm when 3 bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 75 kg

- We recommend using bicycle racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.
- To reduce air resistance and load, we recommend removing baskets, bags, child seats and batteries from the bicycles.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball.
- Do not exceed the permissible weight of the trailer or other accessories, e.g. bicycle rack.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket and the vehicle itself!

- When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Electric motor type	Permissible trailer weight (kg)	
	Braked trailer [a)]	Unbraked trailer
85 kW electric motor	500	500
99 kW electric motor	500	500
155 kW electric motor	1200	750

[a)] On gradients up to 12 %.

Customer information

Stickers and labels

Overview

From the factory, stickers and labels with important information for the operation of the car are placed in the compartment under the bonnet and on some parts of the vehicle.

- Never remove stickers and labels. They should remain legible.

Declaration of Conformity

Concise Declaration of Conformity

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by legal regulations.



Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Declaration of conformity for radio devices

Overview of radio systems in the vehicle » *page 231, Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power*.

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio equipment manufacturers declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of Directive 2014/53/EU.

Ukraine

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. On the Ukraine market, the importer is:

Eurocar Ltd.

67, Beresteiskyi Avenue

Kyiv, 03062

Ukraine

The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine, it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legal regulations of Ukraine.

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA declares that the radio equipment type 013854 complies with the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available on the website at the following address: **https://www.hella.com/vw**.

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeoman Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with Directive 2014/53/AB, it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU, it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial Škoda

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD-2020, mun. Chișinău

Israel

1.3 Israel – MoC, SII

55-10341: Conformity approval number of the Ministry of Communications

Due to the risk of radio frequency interference, changes to the equipment that could affect the wireless function of the equipment, including changing the software, replacing the original aerial, or adding the ability to connect to an external antenna, are prohibited without the approval of the Department of Communications.

Name of device: the Infotainment system screen

Manufacturer Name: LG Electronics

Name and address of importer:

Champion Motors Ltd.

9 Halechi St.

Bnei Brak 51100

Israel

Model: LCW05-SKE5.

Country of production Vietnam

Brand: Škoda Auto a.s.

Israel

Please note that wireless devices are installed in vehicles, for which declarations of conformity are issued by the Ministry of Communications to the importer Champion Motors Ltd. 513973255.

It is prohibited to perform actions on wireless devices that may alter the wireless characteristics of the device, including software changes, replacement of the original antenna, or addition of an external antenna connection option, without obtaining the approval of the Ministry of Communications, due to concerns related to wireless interference.

Taiwan

Radio equipment – Declaration of Conformity

Without a permit granted by the Directorate General of Telecommunications (DGT), no company, firm or user may change the frequency, increase the transmitting power or alter the original characteristics, functions or performance of an approved low-power radio frequency device. Low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect the safety of aircraft or interfere with legal communications. If it does, the user must immediately stop operating the equipment until the interference is removed. Legal communication means radio communication operated in accordance with the Telecommunications Act. Radio frequency equipment with low transmitting power has to be sensitive to interference caused by legal communication or devices transmitting radio waves in the ISM bands.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the Škoda website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market.
- Information on the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers.

To view the information, use the following link or load the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/red-doc

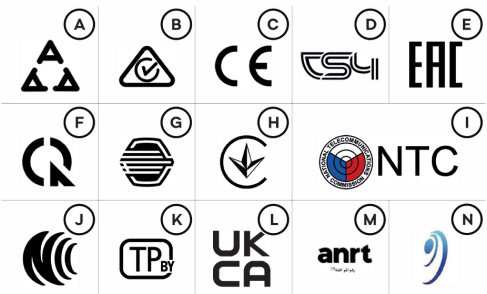
1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



- (A) Serbia
- (B) Australia and New Zealand
- (C) Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- (D) Armenia
- (E) Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
- (F) Vietnam
- (G) Mongolia
- (H) Ukraine
- (I) Philippines
- (J) Taiwan
- (K) Belarus
- (L) Great Britain
- (M) Morocco
- (N) Oman

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Central locking remote control key

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
433.05–434.79 MHz	10 mW
6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–

UWB box

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
6.0–8.5 GHz (6.4896 GHz, 6.9888 GHz, 7.4880 GHz, 7.9872 GHz)	-41.3 dBm/MHz / max. -0.75 mW / 0 dBme.i.r.p.

Central electronics unit

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
433.05–433.79 MHz	10 mW

Keyless car locking

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
125 kHz	76 dBµA/m
	89 dBµA/m

The Infotainment system

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
MW (AM): 531–1602 kHz	–
FM: 87.5–108 MHz	–
DAB: (BAND III): 174.928–239.2 MHz	–
Bluetooth: 2402–2480 MHz	9.99 dBm/6.75 dBm (BLE)
Wi-Fi: 2402-2480 MHz	18.96 dBm
Wi-Fi: 5150-5250 MHz	15.82 dBm
Wi-Fi: 5725-5875 MHz	11.30 dBm

NFC

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
13.56 MHz	100 mW

Radar sensors for assistance systems

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
76–77 GHz	27.2 dBm/32.8 dBm

Antennas and impedance converters

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
FM: 87–108 MHz	–
DAB: 174–240 MHz	–

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
GNSS: 1559.052–1605.375 MHz	–

Phone box wireless charger

Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
WLC: 128 +/-3.75 kHz/360 +/-3.6 kHz NFC: 13.56 +/-0.007 MHz	VLC: max 15 W NFC: max 100 mW

Event data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

Regulations

The vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder, hereinafter referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, hereinafter referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which an accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The vehicle's speed

The recorded data enables analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Lane keeping assistant (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data, such as name, gender, age and location of the accident, are not stored in EDR. However, third parties, e.g. law enforcement authorities, may use certain resources to merge EDR content with other data sources in order to identify certain parties involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment must used to obtain EDR data.

Škoda Auto will not load or otherwise process any accident data from EDR without the consent of the vehicle owner or another person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Regulations

Škoda Auto collects, processes and uses the personal data of customers in accordance with the generally binding legal regulations governing personal data protection.

You may view the current privacy statement at the following link or by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/personal-data

Collection and processing of scrap cars

Ecological disposal

As the car contains a range of potentially hazardous substances, it must be disposed of at the end of its life in accordance with local legislation. Hand over the car for environmental disposal only to an authorised body. For more information, please contact any Škoda Partner.

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Regulations

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end user, you have a legal obligation to take used batteries to a collection point.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

- Used batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner in EU member states and other countries.
- High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol .

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

- Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
- You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Product recycling

Regulations

The following information applies to France.

The following figure shows the instructions for the recycling of items:

- Car keys
- Remote control of independent heating and ventilation
- Compressor
- Charging cable
- Card with mobile key



The following figure shows the instructions for the recycling of the item:

- Fire extinguisher



The following figure shows instructions for recycling documents, packaging or bags from items:

- Owner's manual
- Car first aid kit
- Fire extinguisher
- Compressor
- Charging cables
- Charging socket and sealing cap
- Tool kit

- Tyre repair kit
- Warning triangle
- Reflective vest
- Tool bag



ⓘ The Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Regulations

Some terms in this manual are accompanied by the ® or ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

- **"Android Auto™"** is a trademark of Google Inc.
- **"Apple CarPlay™", "Siri®"** are a trademark and a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- **"Bluetooth®"** is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
- **"HDMI, the HDMI"** logo are a trademark or a registered trademark of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- **"Windows®"** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Preparation for breathalyser

Regulations

The vehicle is equipped with a preparatory kit for the installation of an alcohol tester with LIN bus communication corresponding to EU 2019/2144 standard.

Have the alcohol tester installed by a specialist garage.

Warranty

Liability for defects, Škoda warranties

Liability for defects

In accordance with the legal regulations and the purchase contract, your Škoda Partner, as the seller, is liable for material defects of your new Škoda vehicle, Škoda Genuine Parts, and Škoda Genuine Accessories.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible Škoda partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is properly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN) in the "Vehicle handover documentation" section in this document.

Škoda warranty for new vehicles

In addition to rights from defective performance arising from legal regulations, Škoda Partners or Škoda Auto a.s.[1)] provide you with the Škoda new vehicle warranty (hereafter the "Škoda Warranty") under the terms and conditions described hereinbelow.

1) Applies to the Czech Republic and Germany.

Within the Škoda Warranty, Škoda Partners, or Škoda Auto a.s. through its Škoda[1] Partners, provide the following performance[2]:

- Free repair of damage to the vehicle caused by a material defect or production process if the same occurs on your vehicle within 2 years from the commencement of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects if the same occurs on your vehicle within 3 years from the commencement of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the Škoda Warranty shall exclusively cover rust corrosion penetrating through the body from the inside to the outside.
- Free repair of the high-voltage battery if the high-voltage battery becomes defective within 8 years or before reaching the value stated in the infotainment of your vehicle marked as “total distance including virtual distance” (hereinafter referred to as the “total distance”) of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda warranty period is reached.

  Since the bidirectional charging function can influence the total usable capacity of the high-voltage battery, the total distance, which is the sum of the distance travelled and the virtual distance, is decisive for determining the warranty period of the high-voltage battery instead of just the actual distance travelled by the vehicle. You can find both values in your vehicle’s infotainment system under Service, Vehicle data.

  The reason for introducing the total distance, apart from lapse of time itself, as a decisive value for keeping the warranty period of the high-voltage battery is that, the use of the bidirectional charging function despite of its impact on total usable capacity of high voltage battery has no reflection in the value which determine total taken distance. The virtual distance value is calculated by converting the amount of electrical energy into the distance travelled by dividing the amount of electrical energy taken from the vehicle when using the bidirectional charging function by the hypothetical electrical energy consumption of the vehicle. The hypothetical consumption of electric energy by your vehicle will be provided by your Škoda Partner upon request.
- A reduction in the capacity of a high-voltage battery over time is a natural manifestation of technology and is not a defect within the meaning of the Škoda warranty (it is natural wear and tear), provided that this value, as measured by a Škoda service partner, does not fall below 70 % of its original total usable capacity before 8 years or total mileage 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Warranty.

The total usable capacity of the high-voltage battery at the start of the Škoda warranty is stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (hereinafter referred to as “the original total usable capacity”).

The commencement of the Škoda Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a Škoda Partner to the first buyer who is not a Škoda[3] Partner.

Škoda Partner shall enter this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any Škoda Partner can notify you of this date on request.

The remedy of a defect under the Škoda Warranty may be carried out by replacing or repairing the defective parts. This also applies to the high-voltage battery and its components. It is up to the Škoda authorised workshop to decide how the defect should be rectified. The remedy of the defect will be carried out within a time period according to the Škoda Service Partner's possibilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the Škoda Service Partner.

---

1) Applies to the Czech Republic and Germany.
2) In some countries, Škoda Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the Škoda Warranty terms and conditions indicated herein. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, refer to the purchase contract with your Škoda partner or the accompanying Škoda documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the Škoda Warranty may only be exercised with Škoda Partners who have undertaken to provide such warranty.
3) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

If a defect within the scope of the Škoda warranty is manifested in the form of an excessive reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery, the total usable capacity of the battery shall reach at least the following level after the defect has been rectified:

- 78 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle before 3 years, or before the total mileage of 60,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda warranty.
- 74 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 3 to 5 years, or before the total mileage of 100,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda warranty.
- 70 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 5 to 8 years, or before the total mileage of 160,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the Škoda warranty.

No further claims shall arise from the Škoda Warranty, namely with regard to vehicle replacement, right of rescission of the purchase contract, reduction of the purchase price, provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of the repair, or damage compensation.

Škoda warranty can be claimed at any Škoda authorised workshop operating in the country where Škoda electric vehicles are sold by Škoda partners. You can find an overview of these countries on the Škoda Auto website. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

No claims shall arise under the Škoda Warranty, if damage to the vehicle occurred in a causal relationship with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out in time and professionally in accordance with the instructions of Škoda Auto a.s., or its execution was not demonstrated by the customer when filing a claim under the Škoda Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to an expert servicing workshop or was not properly rectified without undue delay.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, bulbs, 12V vehicle batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, performing other modifications or technical changes to the vehicle not approved by Škoda Auto a.s. (e.g. tuning).
- Improper or unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. during motor racing, when overloading with cargo, when transporting people commercially or when using a high-voltage battery commercially), improper care or improper maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, besides other things, ignoring the warning lights and warning messages of the car, failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time, or failure to follow the instructions for charging the high-voltage battery.
- The vehicle does not meet the country-specific requirements and is permanently operated in such country.
- The vehicle is registered or permanently operated in a country, for which it was not designated by Škoda Auto a.s. and in which it is thus unavailable at Škoda Partners.
- Use of the vehicle high-voltage battery as a stationary source of electrical power, except for the “Bidirectional charging” function, provided that a Wallbox (DC) charging station designed for this functionality and approved by Škoda Auto a.s. is used.
- Exposing the high voltage battery to water or other liquids.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This Škoda warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory defect liability rights or any claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the Škoda Warranty pass to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the vehicle.

Škoda Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including

technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the Škoda Service Partner, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the Škoda Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Certain claims for the free provision of services under the Škoda Mobility Guarantee shall only arise if your vehicle becomes immobile in a causal relationship with the defect, which is to be remedied through performance provided under the Škoda Warranty.

Check the conditions for the provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your Škoda Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional Škoda Extended Warranty

If you have also purchased the Škoda Extended Warranty with your new vehicle, Škoda Partners, or Škoda Auto a.s. through its Škoda[1)] Partners, will provide free repairs of damage to the vehicle caused by a material defect or production process during the term thereof.

The Škoda Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the Škoda Extended Warranty, the conditions of the Škoda Warranty described above shall reasonably apply.

Defects may only be remedied under the Škoda Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereas the Škoda Service Partner decides on the method of vehicle repair. The remedy of the defect will be carried out within a time period according to the Škoda Service Partner's possibilities.

No further claims shall arise from the Škoda Extended Warranty, namely with regard to vehicle replacement, right of rescission of the purchase contract, reduction of the purchase price, provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of the repair, or damage compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty, the warranty against corrosion of the body and the high-voltage battery warranty are unaffected by the Škoda extended warranty.

The Škoda Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the Škoda Extended Warranty, contact your Škoda Partner.

ⓘ The Škoda Mobility Guarantee and the Škoda Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

---

1) Applies to the Czech Republic and Germany.

Specifications of electric motors and high-voltage accumulators

Technical data and specifications

Information required by Directive EU 2023/1542 on batteries

Technical data and documents required by the Directive EU 2023/1542 can be found on the website available after loading the following QRcode:



85 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	38.5/37.5
High-voltage battery technology	LFP
Power (kW)	85
Highest torque (Nm)	267
Maximum speed (km/h)	150
Acceleration 0–100 km/h	11

99 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	38.5/37.5
High-voltage battery technology	LFP
Power (kW)	99
Highest torque (Nm)	267
Maximum speed (km/h)	150
Acceleration 0–100 km/h	9.8

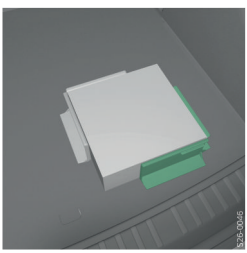
155 kW electric motor

High-voltage battery energy (nominal/usable kWh)	55/51.9
High-voltage battery technology	NMC
Power (kW)	155
Highest torque (Nm)	290
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0–100 km/h	7.4

Simply Clever

Cargo elements in the luggage compartment

Overview



The maximum load of the Cargo element is 8 kg.

For further details, see » *page 207*.

Cup holder with the Easy Open function

Overview



For further details, see » *page 211*.

Adjustable divider in cup holder

Overview



For further details, see » *page 211*.

The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment

Overview



The compartment is designed for a maximum 1.5l bottle.

The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment

Overview



The compartment is designed for a maximum 1l bottle.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar

Overview



The maximum hook load is 2 kg.

Hook on the lashing eye of the TOP TETHER system

Overview



For further details, see » page 207.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

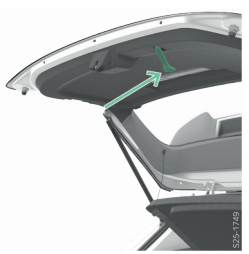
Overview



For further details, see » page 207.

Boot lid handle

Overview



For further details, see » page 54.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

Overview



For further details, see » *page 208*.

Phone pocket

Overview



For further details, see » *page 210*.

Stowing the hard luggage compartment cover behind the rear seats

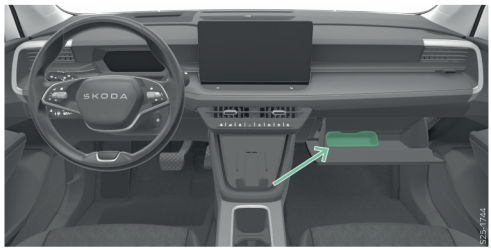
Overview



For further details, see » *page 208*.

Glasses holder

Overview

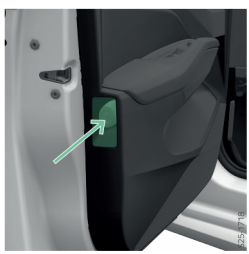


Maximum storage compartment load is 0.25 kg.

For further details, see » *page 209*.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



For further details, see » *page 210*.

Bag for stowing charging cables

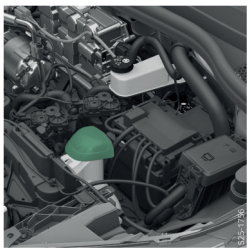
Overview



For further details, see » *page 214*.

Washer fluid filler cap

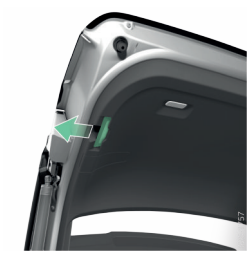
Overview



For further details, see » *page 78*.

Ice scraper in the boot lid

Overview



Rear reading lamps

Overview



For further details, see » *page 76*.

Index

Numbers and symbols

12V battery
see 12V battery 191
12V vehicle battery
charging 191
checking the condition 191
discharge protection 191
safety 33

A

ABS 138
ACC 143
automatic start-stop system 144
interrupting speed control 145
setting the distance 145
Accessing the fuses 195, 196
Accident data recorder 232
Acid 191
Adaptive Cruise Control 143
Adaptive headlights 74
activation/deactivation 74
Air Care 80
Air conditioning
see Climatronic 80
Airbag 67
placement 68
Switching off passenger front airbag 69
Alarm 49
trailer 50
Alcohol tester 234
All-season tyres 198
Armrest
a the back 57
Assist systems
drive systems 138
parking systems 157
safety 36
Auto Hold 137
Automatic gearbox 129
Automatic recuperation assist
see Eco Assist 155
Axle loads 225

B

Background lighting 76
Boot lid
automatic locking mechanism 54
manual operation 54
manual unlocking 54
Brake fluid 134
safety 33
Brakes 134
brake pads 135
parking brake 135
Breakdown call 126

C

Car seat
see Child seat 62
Cargo elements 207
Carpets 209
Central locking 46
SAFELOCK function 46
Central locking button 46
Centre console 18
Charging 174
Battery Care Mode 180
bidirectional charging 181
charging setting options 179
charging socket 175
low charge level 169
Plug & Charge 180
setting charging locations 180
Vehicle to load 180
Charging cables 183
charging cable Mode 2 184
charging cable Mode 3 185
mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket 177
mode 2 universal charging cable 185
storage 206, 214
Charging time 175
Checking the vehicle before the journey 33
Child lock 51
Child seat 62
belt attachment 64

Grouping 64
ISOFIX/i-Size 64, 66
on a passenger seat 63
securing children properly 35
TOP TETHER 66
Cleaning the vehicle
instructions for exterior cleaning 223
instructions for interior cleaning 221
what you should be mindful of 221
Climatronic 80
air conditioning settings 82
Coming Home 74
Compartments 209, 210
Connect Store 125
Convenience turn signal 72
Coolant
checking 189
indicator light 190
refilling 189
safety 33
see Air Conditioning 80
specification 189
Cooling system 80
Crew Protect Assist
see Crew Protect Assist 152
Cup holder 211
Cyber security 101

D

Data connection 120
Daytime running lights 71
automatic activation and deactivation 71
Declaration of Conformity 229
Digital assistant Laura 92
Digital cockpit 86
Digital instrument cluster
see Digital cockpit 86
Digital key 42
temporary access card 43
Doors
opening/ closing 51
Drive power
indicator 172
Driver Alert
see Driver Alert 153
Driver's seat 17
Driving data 86
reset 87
Driving modes 129
Eco 130
Individual 130
Normal 130
Sport 130
Driving performance
indicator 172
Driving with a trailer
safety 36
Trailer stabilization system 138
Dynamic Light Assist
see Dynamic Light Assist 75

E

e-Sound 137
Earth point 193
eBKV 138
Eco Assist 155
Ecological disposal 233
Ecological vehicle disposal 232
Economical driving style 132
EDS 138
Electric window control 52
activation 52
force limiter 51
operation 52
troubleshooting 52
Electrical parking brake 135
Emergency
emergency call 38
using jump start cables 192
what to do after an accident 40
what to do in the event of a fire 40
Emergency Assist 154
see Emergency Assist 154
Emergency braking
see Front Assist 139
see Park Pilot 157
see Pedestrian and Cyclist Detection 140
Emergency call 38
Emergency equipment 206
first aid kit 206
reflective vest 206
tool kit 207
warning triangle 206
Engine number 225
ESC 138
ESC Sport 138
Explanations 6
Exterior mirrors 59

F

Fasteners in the boot 207
Fatigue detection 153
First aid kit 206
Fog lights
a the back 73
Fogging 82

Force limiter
sunroof sunshade 53
windows 51
Front Assist 139
Distance warning 139
Front headlights
driving in the opposite direction of traffic 71
dynamic cornering lights 74
tilt adjustment 70
Front seats
electrically operated 55
manually operated 55
Front vehicle area 15
Fuses 194
in compartment under the bonnet 195
in the dash panel 194
replacing 194

H

Hazard warning lights 73
Headlight Assistant 75
Headlight range 70
Headrests 57
Heaters function 81
High beam 72
Headlight Assistant 75
High beam assistant 74
High beam assistant 74
High-voltage battery 168
AC charging 177
DC charging 178
High-voltage battery calibration 170
High-voltage battery charge status 170
High-voltage system 168
Hooks
In the interior 210
in the luggage compartment 207

I

Ice scraper 16
Ignition 128
Inattention detection 154
Independent air conditioning 83
Instant air conditioning 83
setting the departure time 84
Indicator lights
intro 19
overview 19, 25
Information calls 126
Infotainment Online 127
Instrument cluster
digital cockpit 86
Interior background lighting 76
Interior equipment
12V socket 209, 211
carpets 209
coat hooks 210
cup holder 211
glasses holder 209
make-up mirror 209
storage compartment for umbrella 210
storage compartments 209, 210
storage pockets 210
ticket holder 209
Interior lighting 76
Interior mirror 58
ISOFIX/i-Size 66
fastening eyes 66
placement in the seat 64

J

Jump start cables 193

K

KESSY
see also Keyless locking 47
Key 41
key shank 41
key synchronisation 42
removing the key part 41
replacing the battery 42
Keyless locking (KESSY) 47
automatic locking when exiting the vehicle 48
unlocking when approaching the vehicle 48
KFG 219

L

Labels
12V vehicle battery 191
charging cable connector 183
charging indicator light 175
child seat 63
coolant in the air conditioning system 80
headrests 57
high voltage 168
space under the bonnet 32
specified tyre pressure values 203
type of charging connector 177
type plate 225
Lane Assist 146
see Lane Assist 146
Leaving Home 74
Lever
Headlight Assistant 75
high beam 72
High beam assistant 75

turn signal 72
wipers and washers 77
Liability for defects
see Warranty 234
Lifting the vehicle 199
Light Assist
see Light Assist 74
Light switch 70
Lighting
background 76
inner 76
outer 70
Lights 70
All weather lights 73
automatic activation and deactivation 71
driving in the opposite direction of traffic 71
front dynamic cornering lights 74
hazard warning lights 73
Headlight Assistant 75
headlight flasher 72
headlight range control 70
high beam 72
High beam assistant 74
indicator light 72
parking lights 73
rear fog light 73
turn signal 72
Limiter
see Speed limiter 141
Load distribution 36
Locking 46
central locking button 46
digital key 42
key 41
keyless locking 47
mechanically locking the door 47
Logout screen 89
Low beam 71
Luggage compartment 206
fasteners 207
hard cover 208
subwoofer 208
transporting objects safely 35
variable loading floor 208
Luggage compartment equipment 206

M

Map 113
MATRIX headlights
see Dynamic Light Assist 75
MCB 138
Media 99
Mirrors
see Exterior mirrors 59
see Interior mirror 58
Mobile devices management 101
Monitoring the surroundings
see Top View 159
MSR 138
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 138

N

Navigation 113
New vehicle or new parts 31

O

On-demand functions 127
One pedal driving 131
Online services
availability of services 119
breakdown call 126
Information calls 126
MyŠkoda application 120
personal data 121
personal data protection settings 121
Škoda Connect 119
Škoda Connect services 127
Škoda Connect services user registration and activation 121
System update 124
user management 122

P

Park assistant with memory function 164
troubleshooting 165
Parking
Parking aid 157
Rear Traffic Alert 160
rear view camera 158
safe vehicle stopping 37
Parking aid 157, 158
Parking assist systems 157
Parking brake 135
Electric parking brake is switched off 135
Parking lights 71, 73
see Parking lights function 73
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 157
Passenger front airbag switch 18, 69
Passenger seat 18
Pedestrian and cyclist detection 140
Personal data 232
Personalisation 124
Phone 103
charging 210

Phone box 210
Phone charging 210
Power assisted steering 58
Predictive adaptive Cruise Control 143
Pushing the vehicle 132
Putting the vehicle into operation
using jump start cables 192

R

Radio 95
Radio systems in the vehicle 229
Radio waves
grommet through the windshield 32
Range 171
Rear fog light 73
Rear lights animation 74
Rear seats
folding down 56
Rear Traffic Alert 160
Rear vehicle area 16
Rear view camera 158
operation 159
Recirculated air mode 80
Recycling 233
Refilling
coolant 189
windscreen washer fluid 78
Reflective vest 206
Regenerative braking 130
indicator 130
operation 131
Remote access 127
Remote iV services 127
Remotely controlled parking 165
troubleshooting 167
Rigid boot cover 208
Road traffic accidents
data recorder 232
emergency call 38
what to do after an accident 40
Roof rack 215
roof load 215
safe driving 36

S

SAFE – function 46
Safe driving 36
Safety
before your journey 31
belt webbing arrangement 34
child seat 35
climatic conditions 37
correct sitting 34
driving through water 36
emergency call 38
exiting the vehicle 37
indicator lights 36
new vehicle or new parts 31
sensors and cameras 32
transporting loads and objects 35
vehicle adjustments 31
what to do after an accident 40
what to do in the event of a fire 40
Seat belts 61
blocked belt 62
fastening and unfastening 62
Seat heating 84
Seat memory 55
Seats 55
folding down 56
heating 84
ISOFIX/i-Size 66
seat memory 55
TOP TETHER 66
Service events 219
date display 219
interval 219
resetting data 219
Service work 219
Setting the tyre pressure 204
Side Assist 150
see Side Assist 150
Side vehicle area 15
Škoda Prepaid service 220
Smart parking assistant 162
troubleshooting 163
SmartLink 109
Android Auto 109
Apple CarPlay 111
Snow chains 198
Snow under the bonnet 189
sockets
12V socket 211
safety 33
SOH
see High-voltage battery state of health 170
Space under the bonnet 18
opening the cover 189
safety 32
Speed limiter 141
indicator light 141
Speed limiter with predictive control 141
Starter button 128
Steering column lock 58
Steering wheel 58
buttons 58, 86

correct position 34
heating 85
settings 58
Steering wheel heating 85
Subwoofer 208
Sunroof
electrical operation of the sunroof sunshade 53
Sunshades 53
electrical operation of the sunroof sunshade 53
Switching low beam on automatically 71
System update 124

T

TCS 138
Technical data and specifications 225
Overall dimensions 226
The bonnet 189
The Infotainment system
Applications menu 89
configuration assistant 89
control center 92
display overview 91
favourite applications 89
HOME menu 88
keypad 91
Laura application 92
notification centre 92
overview 88
reboot procedure 90
settings 89
sound settings 90
system update 90
Tips for economical driving 132
Tips for faster charging 175
Tool kit 207
TOP TETHER 66
attaching eyes 66
Top View 159
Towing
tow rope 132
towing bar 132
towing eye 133
transportation by tow truck 132
Towing bracket 215
conditions for fitting the tow bar 216
installing the tow bar 216, 217
overview 215
setting the standby position 216
standby position 216
technical data 226
troubleshooting 218
what you should be mindful of 215
Trademarks 234
Traffic sign recognition 151
Trailer
alarm 50
coupling and uncoupling 217
permissible weight 226
safe driving 36
Trailer stabilization system 138
Transport
roof rack 215
towing bracket 215
transporting objects safely 35
Transporting children 35
Travel Assist 148
see Travel Assist 148
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 138
Turn signal 72
Type plate 225
Tyre pressure monitor 204
Tyres 197, 198
overview of labelling 197
pressure 203
pressure gauge 207
Tyre pressure monitor 204
tyre repair kit 200
tyre tread wear indicator 198
wear indicator 197

U

Umbrella 210
Unlocking 46
central locking button 46
digital key 42
key 41
keyless locking 47
mechanically unlocking the door 47
Updating the navigation database 114
USB 209, 210
User management 122

V

V2L adapter 213
V2L function 180
Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 208
Vehicle adjustments
recommendations 219
safety 31
Vehicle cleaning
what to pay attention to 220
Vehicle dimensions 226
Vehicle height 226
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 225

Vehicle length 226
Vehicle status 87
Vehicle to load 180
Vehicle to Load function 180
Vehicle width 226
Vehicle-to-Load adapter 213
Vest
see Reflective vest 206
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 225
Voice control 92

W

Wallbox 175
Warning assistance when getting out of the vehicle 161
Warning triangle 206
Warranty 234
liability for defects 234
Mobility Guarantee 234
optional extended warranty 234
warranty for new cars 234
Washers
see Wipers and washers 77
Washing in a car wash 221
Washing with a pressure washer 221
Waste container 211
Weight 225
Wheels 197
Aero full-width wheel trim 204
defect 198
full-width wheel trim 204
overview of tyre labelling 197
pressure change 198
replacing 199
screw caps 204
snow chains 198
tyre pressure 203
Tyre pressure monitor 204
tyre tread wear indicator 198
wear indicator 197
Wi-Fi 107
Windows 52
heating 84
Windows heating 84
Windscreen washer fluid
How to top up the fluid 78
low level 78
Winter tyres 198
Wiper service position 79
Wipers and washers 77
automatic wiping 78
convenient rear wiper function 78
folding the wipers away from the windscreen 79
low washer fluid 78
refilling windscreen washer fluid 78
replacing a wiper blade 79
Wireless phone charging 210

X

XDS+ 138